NTT docomo

docomo with series

XPERIA AX SO-01E

INSTRUCTION MANUAL

’12.11

Introduction

Thank you for your purchase of "SO-01E".
For proper use of the SO-01E, read this manual carefully before and while you use the SO-01E.

About manuals of SO-01E

In addition to this manual, the operations of SO-01E are described in "クイックスタートガイド (Quick Start Guide)" (in Japanese only) and "Instruction Manual" application of the terminal (in Japanese only).

● **"クイックスタートガイド (Quick Start Guide)" (Supplied accessories)**
The initial operations and settings after purchasing the terminal, screen view contents and operations of main function are explained. (In Japanese only)

● **"Instruction Manual" (Application of the terminal)**
Similarly to this manual, operations and settings of each function are explained. To use "Instruction Manual" application, from the Home screen, tap and [Instruction Manual]. When using for the first time, download and install the application according to the onscreen instructions. If you delete "Instruction Manual" application, you can access Google Play from Play Store to install again. From the Home screen, tap [Play Store] and search "Instruction Manual" application to select, then follow the onscreen instructions to install. You can use the application as an electronic book. You can also shift to actual operations by tapping the description in the contents or view reference contents.

❖Note

- For downloading or updating the application, a high packet communication charge will be applied because of a large amount data communication. For this reason, subscription of packet flat-rate service is highly recommended.

● **"Instruction Manual" (PDF file)**
Operations and settings of each function are explained. It can be downloaded from NTT DOCOMO website.
http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/trouble/manual/download/index.html
* You can download the latest information of "クイックスタートガイド (Quick Start Guide)" (in Japanese only). The URL and contents are subject to change without prior notice.

❖Note

- Reproduction or reprint of all or part of this manual without prior permission is prohibited.
- Important information for SO-01E is posted in the following website. Be sure to check before using.
http://www.sonymobile.co.jp/support/use_support/product/so-01e/ (In Japanese only)

● **スマホなるほどツアーズ for docomo with series "Tips of smartphone for docomo with series" (Widget in the terminal)**
An widget with which you can easily learn useful functions and basic operations you should know with Docomodake.
To use Tips of smartphone for docomo with series, from the Home screen, tap

.

Operation descriptions

In this manual, each key operation is described with [⏻], [↩], [⌂], [▭], [◁ ▷]. And selection operations of the icons or function items on the touch screen are described as follows.

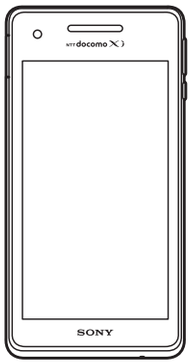
Description	Operation
From the Home screen, tap [⋮⋮⋮] and tap [Settings]▶[About phone].	From the Home screen, tap [⋮⋮⋮] (Applications button), and then tap "Settings" on the next screen and "About phone" on the following screen in order.
Touch and hold an icon.	Keep touching an icon longer (1-2 seconds).

❖Information

- In this manual, the instructions are described with the default Home screen. If you set the other application to the home screen, the operations may differ from the descriptions.
- Display examples and illustrations used in this manual are just images for explanations and may be different from actual ones.
- In this manual, the easier procedure is described for the functions and settings which have multiple operating procedures.
- Please note that "SO-01E" is called "the terminal" in this manual.
- In this manual, explanations for "docomo" as Home application are provided. To switch the Home applications, see "Learning Home screen" (P.70).

Supplied accessories

- SO-01E (with warranty)

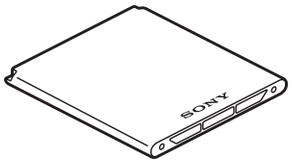


- Back Cover SO21

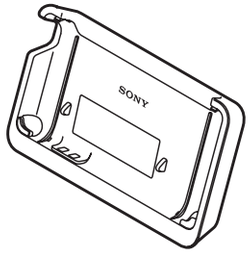
- クイックスタートガイド (Quick Start Guide) (In Japanese only)

- SO-01Eのご利用にあたっての注意事項
  安全上／取り扱い上のご注意
  (Notes on usage Safety/Handling precautions) (In Japanese only)

- Battery Pack SO08



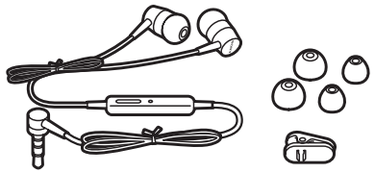
- Desktop Holder SO14 (with warranty)



- 1Seg antenna cable SO01

- microSD card (2GB) (Sample)*
  (Inserted in the terminal when purchased.)

- Stereo Headset with Microphone (Sample)*



* with manual

For details on optional devices, see "Optional and related devices" (P.239).

Contents

■ **Supplied accessories 2**
■ **About using the terminal 5**
■ **Safety Precautions (Always follow these directions) 7**
■ **Handling precautions 17**
■ **Waterproofness/Dustproofness 24**

Before Using the Terminal . . . 30

Part names and functions 30
docomo mini UIM card 31
microSD card 33
Battery pack 34
Charging 35
Turning power on/off 39
Initial settings 40
Status bar 41
Notification panel 43
Notification LED 44
Basic operations 45
Searching information in the terminal and web pages 48
Character entry 49
Setting character entry 62
Setting Xperia™ Japanese keyboard 62
USB keyboard/Bluetooth keyboard 68

docomo Palette UI 70

Home screen 70
Application screen 76

Phone 85

Making/Receiving a call 85
Operations during a call 88
Call history 89
Call settings 91
Phonebook 92

Mail/Web browser 102

sp-mode mail 102
Message (SMS) 102
Email 105
Gmail 112
Google Talk 112
Early Warning "Area Mail" 113
Web browser 114

Settings 118

Viewing the setting menu 118
Wireless & networks 118
Device 130
PERSONAL 139
SYSTEM 151

File management 154

Handling a file 154
Transferring and moving data 154
Using infrared communication 158
Using Bluetooth function 161
Sharing files with DLNA devices 165

Applications 167

dmenu 167
dmarket 167
Play Store 168

Osaifu-Keitai 169
1Seg 175
FM radio 183
Camera 185
Playing multimedia content 203
Album 205
YouTube 207
Connecting the terminal to TV to watch photos and videos 208
Media Player 210
Timescape™ 213
Location services 216
Calendar 221
Alarm & clock 223
ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup) 227
OfficeSuite 229

International roaming 230

Overview of International roaming (WORLD WING) 230
Available Services 230
Before using 231
Making/Receiving calls in the country you stay 234
International roaming settings 236

Appendix/Index 239

Optional and related devices 239
Troubleshooting 239
Smartphone Anshin Remote Support 246
Warranty and After Sales Services 247
Updating software 250
Main specification 253
Specific Absorption Rate of Mobile Phone, etc. 256
End User Licence Agreement 268
About Open Source Software 269
Export Controls and Regulations 269
Intellectual Property Right 270
SIM unlock 273
Index 274

About using the terminal

- The terminal supports LTE, W-CDMA, GSM/GPRS and Wireless LAN Systems.
- Because a terminal operates using radio frequencies, it cannot be used inside a tunnel, underground, in a building or other locations where radio waves do not reach the terminal, in locations with weak radio wave condition, or out of Xi/FOMA service area. The services may not be available on high upper floors of high-rise apartments or buildings, even if you can see no obstructions around you. On occasion, your calls may become disconnected even in areas with strong radio wave condition, even if you are not moving, or even if there are 4-antenna marks in the terminal's display.
- Because your terminal uses radio waves to communicate, it is possible that a third party may attempt to tap your calls. However, the LTE, W-CDMA, GSM/GPRS system automatically scrambles all calls through a private call feature. Therefore, even if third party successfully intercepts your call, they will only hear noise.
- The terminal operates on radio frequencies by converting voice into digital signals. If the caller moves into an area of adverse radio wave condition, the digital signal may not be restored accurately, and the voice received in the call may differ slightly from the actual voice.
- Note down the information saved in the terminal in a separate note and keep it safely. Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any loss of saved contents of data resulting from malfunction, repair, changing of the model or other handling of the terminal.
- You are recommended to save important data to microSD card.
- As with PCs, some user-installed applications may disrupt the stability of the terminal performance, or unexpectedly transmit information via the Internet causing improper use of your location information as well as personal information recorded on the terminal. Therefore, verify the supplier and operating conditions of the applications to be used before using them.
- This terminal has Xi Area, FOMA Plus-Area and FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area support.
- The terminal does not support i-mode sites (programs) or i-αppli.

- The terminal automatically performs communication for synchronizing data, checking the latest software version, maintain connection with the server, etc. If you transmit a large amount of data such as downloading applications or watching movie, a packet communication charge becomes high. Subscription of packet flat-rate service is highly recommended.
- Depending on the applications or service you use, packet communication fees may be charged even in Wi-Fi communication.
- Public mode (Driving mode) is not supported.
- Setting the terminal to Silent mode does not mute sounds for shutter, playback of video or music, alarm, dial pad touch tones during a call, sound emitted when tapping [End call], etc.
- The names of the operators are displayed on unlocking screen (P.40).
- Your phone number (own number) can be checked as follows:
  From the Home screen, tap and tap [Settings]▶[About phone]▶[Status].
- The software version of your terminal can be checked as follows:
  From the Home screen, tap and tap [Settings]▶[About phone].
- You can perform software update by downloading an update file with a PC via Internet and connecting the PC to the terminal. For details, see "Connecting to a PC and updating" (P.252).
- By some software updates, the operating system (OS) may be version-upgraded for improving the terminal quality. For this reason, you always need to use the latest OS version. And some applications that used in the previous OS version may not be available or some unintended bugs may occur.
- You can use the terminal only with docomo mini UIM card. If you have a UIM or FOMA card, bring it to a docomo Shop to replace. If you use a docomo mini UIM card (red), you cannot use some Osaifu-Keitai compatible services such as international use. Bring it to a docomo Shop to replace in February, 2013 (scheduled) or later.
- Set the screen lock to ensure the security of your terminal for its loss. For details, see "Screen lock" (P.146).
- If your terminal is lost, change your each account password to invalidate authentication using a PC to prevent other persons from using Google services such as Google Talk, Gmail, Google Play, etc., Facebook, Twitter and mixi.
- Google application and service contents are subject to change without prior notice.

- The terminal supports only sp-mode, mopera U and Business mopera Internet. Other providers are not supported.
- To use tethering, subscription of sp-mode is required.
- Packet communication charge when using tethering varies depending on the charging plan you use. Subscription of packet flat-rate service is highly recommended.
- For details on usage charge, etc., refer to the following website.
  http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/

Safety Precautions (Always follow these directions)

- For safe and proper use of the terminal, please read the "Safety Precautions" prior to use. Keep the Manual in a safe place for future reference.
- ALWAYS observe the safety precautions since they intend to prevent personal injury or property damage.
- The following symbols indicate the different levels of injury or damage that may result if the guidelines are not observed and the terminal is used improperly.

⚠ DANGER	Failure to observe these guidelines may immediately result in death or serious injury.
⚠ WARNING	Failure to observe these guidelines may result in death or serious injury.
⚠ CAUTION	Failure to observe these guidelines may result in injury and property damage.

■ The following symbols indicate specific directions.

Don't	Indicates prohibited actions.
No disassembly	Indicates not to disassemble.
No liquids	Indicates not to use where it could get wet.
No wet hands	Indicates not to handle with wet hands.
Do	Indicates compulsory actions in accordance with instructions.
Unplug	Indicates to remove the power plug from the outlet.

■ "Safety Precautions" are described in the following categories:

1. Handling the terminal, battery pack, adapter, desktop holder, docomo mini UIM card, 1Seg antenna cable (common) 8
2. Handling the terminal 10
3. Handling battery pack 12
4. Handling adapter or desktop holder. 13
5. Handling the docomo mini UIM card 15
6. Handling the terminal near electronic medical equipment. 15
7. Material list 16

1. Handling the terminal, battery pack, adapter, desktop holder, docomo mini UIM card, 1Seg antenna cable (common)

⚠ DANGER

Don't

Do not use, store or leave the equipment in hot places (e.g. by the fire, near a heater, under a kotatsu, in direct sunlight, in a car in the hot sun). (including the event that you ware the equipment in the pocket of your clothes, etc.)

Doing so may cause fire, burns or injury.

Don't

Do not place equipment inside cooking appliance such as a microwave oven or high-pressure containers.

Doing so may cause fire, burns, injury or electric shock.

No disassembly

Do not disassemble or modify the equipment.

Doing so may cause fire, burns, injury or electric shock.

No liquids

Do not let the equipment get wet with water, drinking water, urine of pet animals, etc.

Doing so may cause fire, burns, injury or electric shock.

For waterproof, see →P.24. "Waterproofness/ Dustproofness"

Do

Use the battery pack and adapter specified by NTT DOCOMO for your terminal.

Failure to do so may cause fire, burns, injury or electric shock.

⚠ WARNING

Don't

Do not subject the equipment to excessive force or throw it.
Doing so may cause fire, burns, injury or electric shock.

Don't

Do not allow the contacts for the desktop holder, the microUSB jack or headset jack to touch conducting foreign substances (a piece of metal, pencil lead, etc.). Never allow these objects to get inside.
Doing so may cause fire, burns, injury or electric shock.

Don't

Do not cover or wrap the equipment with a cloth or bedding in use or while charging.
Doing so may cause fire or burns.

Do

Power off the terminal before you step into a place where flammable gas can leak, such as gas stations. Stop charging if you charge the battery.
Gas may catch fire.
When using Osaifu-Keitai in a place such as a gas station, turn OFF the terminal before using it.
(When NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is activated, deactivate it before turning OFF the terminal.)

Do

If you notice anything unusual about the equipment such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during operation, charging or storage, immediately perform the following measures.
- **Remove the power plug from the power outlet or cigarette lighter.**
- **Power off the terminal.**
- **Remove the battery pack from the terminal.**

Failure to do so may cause fire, burns, injury or electric shock.

⚠ CAUTION

Don't

Do not place on an unstable or inclined platform.
Doing so may cause the device to fall and cause injury.

Don't

Do not keep in a place that is very humid, dusty, or subject to high temperature.
Doing so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

Do

If children use the terminal, parents or guardians should give them the proper instructions for use. Make sure that they use the terminal as instructed.
Failure to do so may cause injury.

Do

Keep the equipment out of the reach of babies and infants.
Failure to do so may cause accidental swallowing or injury.

Do

Be careful especially when using the terminal connected to the adapter continuously for a long time.

If you play a game, watch 1Seg, etc. for a long time while charging, the temperature of the terminal, battery pack and AC adapter may rise.

If you are directly in contact with hot parts for a long period of time, it may cause your skin to become red, itchy, or develop a rash depending on your physical condition and also it may cause low-temperature burn.

2. Handling the terminal

⚠ WARNING

Don't

Do not direct the infrared data port toward your eye and transmit signals.

Doing so may cause harmful effect your eyes.

Don't

Do not direct the infrared data port toward home electric appliances etc. equipped with infrared device when using infrared communication.

Doing so may cause an accident because of erroneous operation of infrared device.

Don't

Do not turn on the light with the lighting luminescence part close to the eyes. Especially to shoot infants or young children, step away from them 1 m or more.

Doing so may cause blurred vision. Or injury by dazzling eyes or surprising may occur.

Don't

Do not allow a foreign substance such as water and other liquids, metal parts, or flammables to get in the docomo mini UIM card or microSD card slot on the terminal.

Doing so may cause fire, burns, injury or electric shock.

Don't

Do not turn on the light toward a driver of a car etc.

Doing so may disturb driving and cause an accident.

Do

Power off the terminal in a place where the use is prohibited such as in airplane or hospital.

Failure to do so may affect electronic equipment and electronic medical equipment.

Follow the instructions of each medical facility for the use of mobile phones on their premises.

Prohibited acts such as mobile phone usage on board an airplane may be punished by law. If usage of mobile phones in an aircraft is admitted by setting airplane mode, etc., use the terminal under the direction of the airline.

If the microUSB cable is connected into the USB jack for charging etc., the terminal is automatically powered on although the operations are not available. Be careful not to connect the microUSB cable in a place where the use is prohibited such as in airplane or hospital.

Do

Always keep the terminal away from your ear when you talk setting the hands-free function.
Also, when you play game, play back music, etc. connecting the Earphone/Microphone, etc. to the terminal, adjust the volume adequately.
If the volume is too loud, it may cause difficulty in hearing.
Moreover, if you barely hear the surrounding sounds, it may cause an accident.

Do

If you have a weak heart, set the vibrator or ringtone volume carefully.
Failure to do so may affect your heart.

Do

If you are wearing any electronic medical equipment, check with the relevant medical electronic equipment manufacturer or vendor whether the operation may be affected by radio waves.
The radio waves from the terminal may affect electronic medical equipment.

Do

Power off the terminal near electronic devices or equipment operating on high precision control or weak signals.
Failure to do so may interfere with the operation of electronic devices or equipment.

* The followings are some electronic devices or equipment that you should be careful of: Hearing aids, implantable cardiac pacemaker, implantable cardioverter defibrillator, other electronic medical equipment, fire detector, automatic door, and other automatically controlled devices or equipment.
If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker, implantable cardioverter defibrillator, or other electronic medical equipment, check with the relevant medical electronic equipment manufacturer or vendor whether the operation can be affected by radio waves.

Do

Be careful about broken glasses or exposed internal from the terminal if the display or the camera lens is broken.
Shatterproof film-applied hardened glass is used on the display surface and the acrylic resin is applied on camera lens so as not to be shattered when broken. But they may cause injury if you touch a cut surface or exposed portion mistakenly.

⚠ CAUTION

Don't

Do not swing the terminal around by holding a strap etc.
The terminal may hit you or others and cause accident such as injury.

Don't

Do not use damaged terminal.
Doing so may cause fire, burns, injury or electric shock.

Don't

When using the motion sensor, check the safety around you, hold the terminal firmly, and do not shake it unnecessarily.
May cause accident such as injuries.

Don't

If the display is mistakenly damaged and when the liquid crystal runs out, do not get it on your skin such as face, hands, etc.
Doing so may cause blindness or injury on your skin.
If the liquid crystal gets in your eye or mouth, rinse with clean running water, and get medical treatment immediately.
Also, if it gets on your skin or clothes, use something such as alcohol to wipe off and wash it with soap in clear water.

Do

To use the terminal in car, check with automobile manufacturer or dealer to determine how the device is affected by radio waves before using.
In rare cases, using the phone in some vehicle models can cause the vehicle's electronic equipment to malfunction. In that case, stop using the terminal immediately.

Do

The use of the terminal may cause itching, rashes, eczema, or other symptoms depending on the user's physical condition. Immediately stop using and get medical treatment in such a case.
For material of each part →P.16 "Material list"

Do

When watching the display, take a certain distance from the display in a fully bright place.
Failure to do so may reduce visual acuity.

3. Handling battery pack

■ **Check that the battery type matches the type displayed on the battery pack label.**

Display	Type of Battery
Li-ion 00	Lithium Ion Battery

⚠ DANGER

Don't

Do not connect a wire or other metal objects to the jack. And, do not carry or store the terminal with objects like a metal necklace.
Doing so may cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.

Don't

Check the orientation of the battery pack to attach to the terminal, and do not try to force the battery pack onto the terminal if you are having trouble attaching it.
Doing so may cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.

Don't

Do not throw the terminal into fire.
Doing so may cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.

Don't

Do not stick a nail into the terminal, hit it with a hammer, or step on it.
Doing so may cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.

Do

If the battery pack's fluid etc. contacts eyes, immediately flush the eyes with clean water and see a doctor right away. Do not rub the eyes.
Failure to do so may cause blindness.

⚠ WARNING

Don't

If the battery pack seems to have abnormalities such as deformation or scratches due to falling, never use it.
Doing so may cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.

Do

If the battery pack leaks or gives off a strange smell, immediately remove it from the vicinity of open flames.
The leaking liquid may ignite fire, catch fire, or explode.

Do

Be careful not to let your pet bite the battery pack.
Doing so may cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.

⚠ CAUTION

Don't

Do not discard the battery pack together with other garbage.
Doing so may cause igniting or environmental destruction. Tape the terminals of old battery packs to insulate them, and then bring them into a sales outlet such as docomo Shop. If your local municipality has a battery recycling program, dispose of them as provided for.

Don't

Do not use or charge a wet battery pack.
Doing so may cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.

Do

If fluid etc. leaks out from the battery pack, do not make the fluid contact with your skin of face or hands.
Doing so may cause blindness or injury on your skin.
If the fluid etc. gets into your eyes or mouth, or contacts skin or clothes, immediately flush the contacted area with clean running water.
If the fluid gets into the eyes or mouth, immediately see a doctor after flushing.

4. Handling adapter or desktop holder

⚠ WARNING

Don't

Do not use the adapter cord if it gets damaged.
Doing so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

Don't

Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a very humid place such as bathroom.
Doing so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

Don't

DC adapter is only for a negative ground vehicle. Do not use DC adapter for a positive ground vehicle.
Doing so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

Don't

Do not touch the adapter if you hear thunder.
Doing so may cause electric shock.

Don't

Do not short-circuit the microUSB plug while it is connected to the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the microUSB plug with your hands, fingers, or any part of your body.
Doing so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

Don't

Do not place heavy objects on the adapter cord.
Doing so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

Don't

When you insert and remove the AC adapter from power outlet, do not contact a metal strap or other metal objects with the jack.
Doing so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

No wet hands

Do not touch the adapter cord, desktop holder or outlet with wet hands.
Doing so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

Do

Use the adapter only on the specified power supply and voltage.
When charging the terminal overseas, use AC adapter for global use.
Failure to do so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.
AC adapter : AC 100 V
DC adapter : DC 12 V or 24 V (only for a negative-ground vehicle)
AC adapter for global use : AC 100 V to 240 V
(Make sure to connect the adapter to a household AC power outlet.)

Do

When the fuse in a DC adapter is blown, make sure to use the specified fuse.
Failure to do so may cause fire, burns or electric shock. For the specified fuse, see the users manuals that supplied with a DC adapter.

Do

Clean dust from the power plug.
Failure to do so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

Do

When you connect the AC adapter to the power outlet, insert it firmly.
Failure to do so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

Do

When you disconnect the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the adapter cord with excessive force. Instead, hold the adapter to disconnect.
Failure to do so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

Unplug

Always remove the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter when not using the adapter for an extended period.
Failure to do so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

Unplug

Immediately remove the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket if water or other fluids get into the adapter.
Failure to do so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

Unplug

Before cleaning, remove the power plug from the power outlet or the cigarette lighter socket.
Failure to do so may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

5. Handling the docomo mini UIM card

⚠ CAUTION

Do

Be careful of the cut surface when removing docomo mini UIM card.
Failure to do so may cause injury.

6. Handling the terminal near electronic medical equipment

■ The following instructions observe the guidelines of the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, Japan to protect electronic medical equipment from radio waves from mobile phones.

⚠ WARNING

Do

Please observe the following guidelines in medical facilities.
- Do not take the terminal into the operating rooms, ICU (Intensive Care Unit), or CCU (Coronary Care Unit).
- Power off the terminal inside hospital wards.
- Power off the terminal in the lobby and other places if there are any electronic medical equipment operating in the vicinity.
- Follow the instructions of each medical facility when they specify areas forbidding to use and carrying a mobile phone.

Do

Power off the terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains. There may be a person with an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator near you.
The radio waves from the terminal may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator.

Do

If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator, keep the terminal 22 cm or more away from the implant at all times.
The radio waves from the terminal may affect the performance of electronic medical equipment.

Do

If you need to use electronic medical equipment other than implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator outside medical facilities such as treating at home, check with the relevant medical electronic equipment manufacturer whether the operation may be affected by radio waves.
The radio waves from the terminal may affect the performance of electronic medical equipment.

7. Material list

Part	Material	Surface treatment
Exterior case (case : front)	Nylon resin (with glass)	UV coating
Exterior case : black, turquoise (case : rear)	PC resin (with glass)	Discontinuous evaporation coating (tin) + UV coating
Exterior case : white, pink (case : rear)	PC resin (with glass)	UV coating
Exterior case : black (microUSB jack cover)	PC resin (with glass)	Discontinuous evaporation coating (tin) + Urethan coating
Exterior case : turquoise (microUSB jack cover)	PC resin (with glass)	Discontinuous evaporation coating (tin) + UV coating
Exterior case : white, pink (microUSB jack cover)	PC resin (with glass)	UV coating + Urethan coating
Exterior case : black, turquoise (headset jack cover)	PC resin (with glass)	Discontinuous evaporation coating (tin) + UV coating
Exterior case : white, pink (headset jack cover)	PC resin (with glass)	UV coating
Exterior case : black only (back cover)	PC resin (with glass) + Silicon rubber	Urethan coating
Exterior case : white, pink, turquoise (back cover)	PC resin (with glass) + Silicon rubber	UV coating
Exterior case (earpiece)	PC resin	Urethan coating
Transparent plate (camera)	PC + PMMA resin	AR treatment
Transparent plate (flash/photo light)	PC resin	—
Transparent plate (display)	Glass + PET resin	Hard coating
Side keys (power key, volume key) : turquoise only	PC resin	Discontinuous evaporation coating (tin) + UV coating
Side keys (power key, volume key) : black, white, pink	PC resin	UV coating
Battery pack (contacts)	Copper alloy	First nickel plating/Gold plating
Battery pack (body)	PP resin	—
Battery pack (label)	PET resin	UV coating
Desktop holder (upper case)	ABS resin	—
Desktop holder (lower case)	ABS resin	—
Desktop holder (lock)	POM resin	—
Desktop holder (button)	POM resin	—

Part	Material	Surface treatment
Desktop holder (contacts)	Phosphor bronze	Gold plating
Desktop holder (label)	Polyester resin	—
Desktop holder (rubber foot)	Polyester resin	—
Desktop holder (screws)	SWCH	Black chromate plating
1Seg antenna cable (headset jack : upper surface)	PP resin	—
1Seg antenna cable (headset jack : ring)	PC resin	—
1Seg antenna cable (headset jack : body)	Elastomer resin	—
1Seg antenna cable (cable)	Elastomer resin	—
1Seg antenna cable (plug : upper surface)	PP resin	—
1Seg antenna cable (plug : ring)	PC resin	—
1Seg antenna cable (plug : body)	Elastomer resin	—
1Seg antenna cable (plug : metal)	Brass	Gold plating

Handling precautions

Common precautions

- **SO-01E is waterproof/dustproof, however, do not allow water or dust to seep into the terminal and do not allow accessories or optional devices to get wet or dust.**

  The battery pack, adapter, desktop holder, docomo mini UIM card and 1Seg antenna cable are not waterproof/dustproof. Do not use in a bathroom or other highly humid area or do not let rain touch. Or putting them on your body, humidity of sweat may cause internal corrosion and malfunction. Note that malfunctions, which are determined to be caused by water as result of inspections, are outside the scope of the warranty. Since these conditions are outside of the scope of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, is charged.

- **Clean the terminal with a dry soft cloth (such as used for cleaning eyeglasses).**
  - Do not rub it roughly with a dry cloth. The display may be damaged.
  - Drops of water or dirt left on the display may cause stains.
  - Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzine, cleaning detergent, etc. to clean the terminal. These chemicals may erase the printing on the terminal or cause discoloration.

- **Clean the terminals occasionally with a dry cotton swab.**
  If the jack is soiled, connection gets worse and it may cause power to be turned off or insufficient battery charge, so clean the jack with a dry cotton swab etc. When cleaning, be careful not to damage the terminals.
- **Do not leave the terminal near the air conditioning vent.**
  Extreme temperature changes may produce condensation and corrode the internal parts of the terminal, causing it to malfunction.
- **Make sure to use the terminal, battery pack, etc. without excessive force.**
  If you put the terminal in a bag full of items or sit down with the terminal in the pocket of your cloth, it may damage the display, internal circuit board and battery pack, causing malfunction.
  If doing so while the external device is connected to the microUSB jack or headset jack, it may damage the connector and cause malfunction.
- **Do not rub or scratch the display with metal.**
  The display may get scratched and it may cause malfunction or damage.
- **Read the users manuals supplied with optional devices.**

The terminal precautions

- **Do not press touch screen surface forcibly, or not operate with a sharp-pointed objects such as nail, ballpoint pen, pin, etc.**
  Doing so may cause damage of touch screen.
- **Do not use the terminal in extremely hot or cold places.**
  Use the terminal where the temperature ranges between 5℃ and 40℃ (limited to the temporary use for 36℃ or more) and humidity ranges between 45% and 85%.
- **Using the terminal near ordinary phone, television or radio may cause interference in these electric appliances. Make sure to move far away from them when using the terminal.**
- **Note down the information saved in the terminal in a separate note and keep it safely.**
  Under no condition will DOCOMO be held liable for any damaged or lost data saved in the terminal.
- **Do not drop or give a strong impact to the terminal.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction or damage.
- **Do not insert the plug of the external device into the microUSB jack or headset jack at the slant or pull it obliquely while connecting.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction or damage.
- **The terminal could become warm while in use and charging. This condition is not abnormal. You can continue using the terminal.**

- **Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight.**
  If you do so, some of the elements may melt or become faded.
- **Usually, use the terminal with microUSB jack cover and headset jack cover closed.**
  Failure to do so may get dust or water inside and cause malfunction.
- **Do not use the terminal with the back cover removed.**
  Doing so may cause removal of battery pack, malfunction or damage.
- **Do not remove the microSD card or power off the terminal while using the microSD card.**
  Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.
- **Do not let magnetic cards, etc. close to the terminal.**
  The magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.
- **Do not bring strong magnetic objects close to the terminal.**
  Strong magnetic objects may cause misoperation.

Battery pack

- **The battery pack is a consumable accessory.**
  Replace the battery pack if the terminal has extremely short operation time on a full charge, though it may vary by operating conditions. Purchase a new battery pack of the specified type.
- **Charge the battery pack in an environment with the proper ambient temperature (5℃ to 35℃).**
- **The operating time of the battery pack varies depending on the operating environment and the secular degradation of the battery pack.**
- **The battery pack may swell out as it comes to near the end of its lifetime depending on the usage conditions, but it is not a problem.**
- **Be careful especially about the following points when preserving the battery pack.**
  - The battery is fully charged (immediately after the charging is complete)
  - The battery has run out (the phone cannot power on)

  The performance and life of the battery pack may deteriorate.
  It is recommended that you store the internal battery with the remaining battery level of about 40% as a guide.

The adapter precautions

- **Charge the battery pack in an environment with the proper ambient temperature (5℃ to 35℃).**
- **Do not charge in the following places.**
  - Places that are very humid, dusty or exposed to strong vibrations.
  - Near ordinary phone or TV/radio.

- The adapter cable could become warm while charging. This condition is not abnormal. You can continue using the terminal.
- When using the DC adapter for charging, do not turn off the vehicle engine.
  Doing so may cause the vehicle battery run out.
- When you use the power outlet with a mechanism to prevent the plug from being removed, follow the instructions on the outlet's user's manual.
- Do not give a strong impact to the adapter. Also, do not bend or deform the microUSB plug.
  Doing so may cause malfunction.

docomo mini UIM card

- Do not use unnecessary force to insert/remove the docomo mini UIM card.
- Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for malfunctions occurring as the result of inserting and using docomo mini UIM card with another IC card reader/writer.
- Always keep the IC portion clean when you use the card.
- Clean the terminal with a dry soft cloth (such as used for cleaning eyeglasses).
- Note down the information saved in the docomo mini UIM card in a separate note and keep it safely.
  Under no condition will DOCOMO be held liable for any damaged or lost data saved in the terminal.
- Take an expended docomo mini UIM card to sales outlet such as docomo Shop for proper disposal in order to protect the environment.
- Do not carelessly damage, contact, or short-circuit an IC.
  Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.
- Do not drop a docomo mini UIM card or subject it to impact.
  Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Do not bend a docomo mini UIM card or place a heavy object on it.
  Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Do not insert the docomo mini UIM card on which any label or seal is stuck into the terminal.
  Doing so may cause malfunction.

Bluetooth function precautions

- To secure the Bluetooth communication security, the terminal supports the security function compliant with Bluetooth standards, but the security may not be sufficient depending on the setting. Concern about the communication using the Bluetooth function.

- **Please be aware that DOCOMO is not responsible for data leak when making data communications using Bluetooth.**
- **Frequency band**

  The frequency band used by the terminal's Bluetooth/wireless LAN function is written on the battery pack compartment. The label can be read as follows.

  2.4 : This radio equipment uses the 2400 MHz band.

  FH/XX/DS/OF : Modulation scheme is the FH-SS, other system, DS-SS, or OFDM system.

  1 : The estimated interference distance is 10 m or less.

  4 : The estimated interference distance is 40 m or less.

  8 : The estimated interference distance is 80 m or less.

  ▬ ▬ ▬ : The full band between 2400 MHz and 2483.5 MHz is used and the band of the mobile identification device can be avoided.

  Available channels vary depending on the country.
  For use in an aircraft, contact the airline beforehand.

- **Bluetooth cautions**

  The operating frequency band of the terminal is used by industrial, scientific, consumer and medical equipment including microwave ovens, premises radio stations for identifying mobile units used in the manufacturing lines of plants (radio stations requiring a license), specified low power radio stations (radio stations requiring no license) and amateur radio stations (hereinafter referred to as "another station").

  - Before using this equipment, confirm that "another station" is not being operated nearby.
  - In the event of the terminal causing harmful radio wave interference with "another station", promptly change the operating frequency or stop radio wave emission by turning off the power, etc.
  - If you have further questions, contact "General Inquiries" on the last page.

Wireless LAN (WLAN) precautions

- **Wireless LAN (WLAN) exchanges information using radio waves, and allows you to freely establish LAN connection if you are within an area where radio wave reaches. On the other side, if you communicate without appropriate security settings, communications may be intercepted or hacked by malicious parties. It is recommended to make necessary security settings on your responsibility and expense.**

- Wireless LAN

  Do not use wireless LAN near magnetic devices such as electrical appliances or AV/OA devices, or in radio waves.
  - Magnetism or radio waves may increase noises or disable communications (especially when using a microwave oven).
  - When used near TV, radio, etc., reception interference may occur, or channels on the TV screen may be disturbed.
  - If there are multiple wireless LAN access points nearby and the same channel is used, search may not work correctly.
- 2.4GHz device cautions

  The operating frequency band of the WLAN device is used by industrial, scientific, consumer and medical equipment including home electric appliances such as microwave ovens, premises radio stations for identifying mobile units used in the manufacturing lines of plants (radio stations requiring a license), specified low power radio stations (radio stations requiring no license) and amateur radio stations (radio stations requiring a license).
  - Before using the device, confirm that premises radio stations for identifying mobile units, specified low power radio stations and amateur radio stations are not being operated nearby.
  - If the device causes harmful radio interference to premises radio stations for identifying mobile units, immediately change the frequency band or stop use, and contact "General Inquiries" on the last page for crosstalk avoidance, etc. (e.g. partition setup).
  - If the device causes radio interference to specified low power radio stations or amateur radio stations, contact "General Inquiries" on the last page.
- 5GHz device cautions

  The following channel numbers and frequency bands are available in Japan.

	Channel number (Ch)	Frequency band (MHz)
5.2GHz band	36	5,180
	38	5,190
	40	5,200
	44	5,220
	46	5,230
	48	5,240
5.3GHz band	52	5,260
	54	5,270
	56	5,280
	60	5,300
	62	5,310
	64	5,320

	Channel number (Ch)	Frequency band (MHz)
5.6GHz band	100	5,500
	102	5,510
	104	5,520
	108	5,540
	110	5,550
	112	5,560
	116	5,580
	118	5,590
	120	5,600
	124	5,620
	126	5,630
	128	5,640
	132	5,660
	134	5,670
	136	5,680
	140	5,700

5GHz wireless LAN device is prohibited to use outdoor by Law.

Wi Fi CERTIFIED

FeliCa reader/writer function precautions

- FeliCa reader/writer function of the terminal uses weak waves requiring no licenses for radio stations.
- It uses 13.56 MHz frequency band. When using other reader/writers in your surroundings, keep the terminal away sufficiently from them. Before using the FeliCa reader/writer, confirm that there are no radio stations using the same frequency band nearby.

Note

- **Do not use altered terminal. Using an altered device is a violation of the Radio Law.**

  A "Technical Conformity Mark 〒" affixed on the manufacturer's specification sticker certifies that the terminal meets technical regulations for specified radio equipment that are based on the Radio Law.

  If you remove the screws and alter the inside of the terminal, the technical regulations conformity certification becomes invalid.

  Do not use the terminal with the certification invalid, as it is a violation of the Radio Law.

- **Be careful when using the terminal while driving.**

  Using a handheld mobile phone while driving will result in a penalty.

  However, absolutely necessary cases such as rescue of a sick person or maintaining public's safety are exempted.

- **Use the FeliCa reader/writer function only in Japan.**

  FeliCa reader/writer function of the terminal conforms to Japanese radio standards. If you use this function overseas, you may be punished.

- **Do not alter the basic software illegally.**

  It is regarded as the software modification and Repairs may be refused.

Waterproofness/ Dustproofness

SO-01E provides waterproofness of IPX5*1, IPX7*2 and dustproofness of IP5X*3 with microUSB jack cover, headset jack cover and back cover firmly attached.

*1 IPX5 means that a phone keeps functioning after applying a jet flow of 12.5 L/min. from every direction from a distance of approximately 3 m for at least 3 minutes using water nozzle in 6.3 mm inner diameter.

*2 IPX7 means that a phone keeps functioning after SO-01E is slowly submerged to depth of 1 m in static tap water at room temperature, left there for 30 minutes and then taken out.

*3 IPX5 means a degree of protection that a phone keeps functioning and can be used safely after left for 8 hours in equipment with dust particles in diameter of 75 µm or less that are stirred.

What you can do with waterproofness/dustproofness of SO-01E

- You can talk without an umbrella in the rain (for rainfall of 20 mm or less per hour).
  - Do not open or close microUSB jack cover or headset jack cover when your hands are wet or waterdrops are attached to the terminal.
- You can wash the terminal when it gets dirt or stained with liquid other than tap water.
  - Wash the terminal with tap water at normal temperature (5℃-35℃) by weaker water flow (less than 6 L/min.) at distance of approximately 10 cm away from the tap or shower.
  - When washing the terminal, attach the back cover, then hold microUSB jack cover and headset jack cover so as not to open, and wash the terminal with your hands, not using brush or sponge. After washing, drain the terminal before use (P.28).
- You can use at a poolside. Do not throw water from the pool on the terminal, or soak it in pool water.

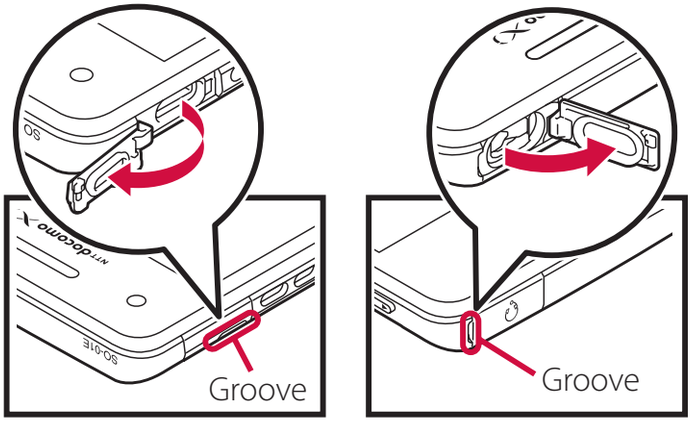
To ensure waterproofness/dustproofness

To avoid water ingress, be sure to observe the following points.

- Do not throw any liquid other than room temperature tap water on the terminal, or soak it in such liquid.
- Firmly close the microUSB jack cover, headset jack cover and back cover. Even a fine obstacle (one hair, one grain of sand, tiny fiber, etc.) put between contact surfaces may allow water to enter.
- Do not poke the microphone, earpiece, speaker, second microphone or strap hole with a sharp object.
- Do not let the terminal fall. It may become scratched causing the waterproof/dustproof performance to degrade.
- The microUSB jack cover, headset jack cover and the rubber gasket of the inner side of the back cover play important roles for keeping waterproof/dustproof performance. Do not remove or damage them. Also, prevent dust from adhering to it.
- Do not peel off the round mesh sheet on the inner side of the back cover. Doing so makes waterproof ineffective.

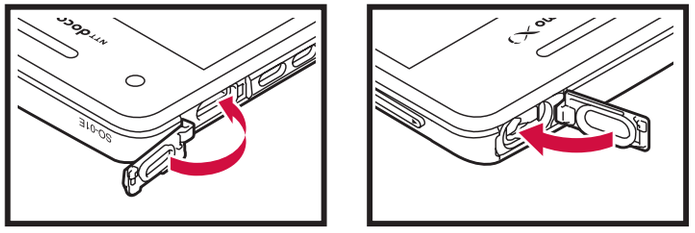
Opening the microUSB jack cover and headset jack cover

Open the covers with your finger by the grooves.



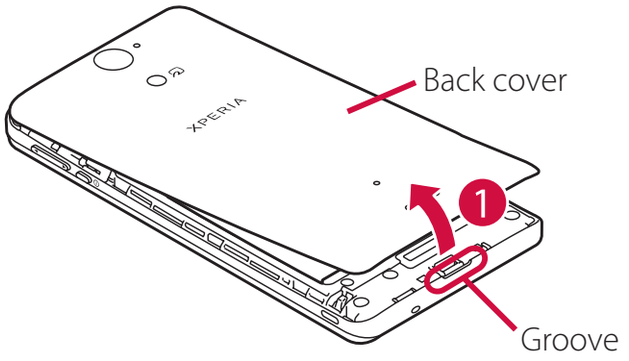
Closing the microUSB jack cover and headset jack cover

Press the covers in the directions of the arrows and ensure there are no gaps.



Removing back cover

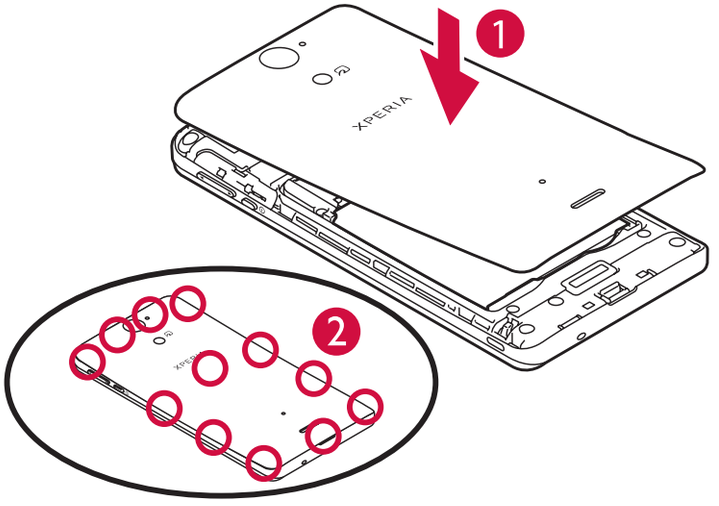
1 Insert the tip of your finger into the groove at the bottom of the terminal, and lift up the back cover in the direction of the arrow (1).



Attaching back cover

1 Check the orientation of the back cover, and attach it to the terminal (1), then press down the ○ part firmly, and then check that there are no gaps between the terminal and back cover (2).

- Be careful not to hook the projection part on the edge of the back cover with finger when attaching the back cover.

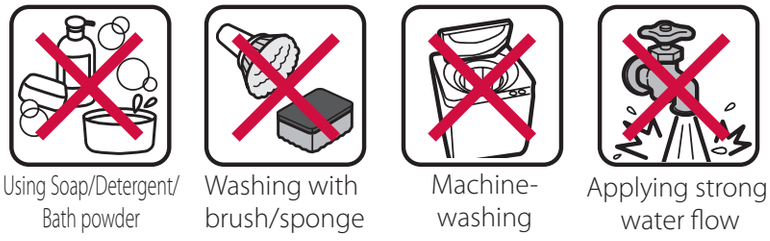


It is recommended to replace the parts for maintaining waterproof/dustproof property once every two years regardless of whether any abnormality is present. DOCOMO replaces the parts as a chargeable service. Bring the terminal to a sales outlet such as a DOCOMO-specified repair office.

Important precautions

Do not perform actions shown in the illustrations below.

<Example>



Observe the following precautions to use the terminal properly.

- Accessories and optional devices are not waterproof/dustproof.
- Do not apply water flow stronger than allowed (water flow of 6L/min. or more : e.g., such water flow that gives you pain when applied to your skin directly from a faucet or shower). SO-01E provides IPX5 waterproofness, but doing so may cause malfunction.
- If the terminal gets wet with salt water, sea water, refreshing beverage or mud or sand adhered, wash it immediately. If they dry out, it is hard to remove the dirt and it may cause damage or malfunction.
- Do not put the terminal in hot water, use it in a sauna or apply hot airflow (from a hair dryer etc.) to it.
- Do not move the terminal in water or slam the terminal against the surface of water.
- If you put the terminal in tap water, be sure to have it within 30 minutes.
- When you use the terminal in swimming pool, obey rules of the facility.
- The terminal does not float on water.
- Do not leave water on the terminal. In cold region, the terminal freezes up and may cause malfunction.
- Do not leave water on the microphone, earpiece, speaker, second microphone or strap hole. Such water may interfere with talking.

- If the terminal gets splashed with water or other liquid while microUSB jack cover, headset jack cover or back cover is opened, the liquid may get inside the terminal causing electric shocks or malfunction. Stop using the terminal, turn off the power and contact a DOCOMO-specified repair office.
- If the microUSB jack cover, headset cover, the rubber gasket of the inner side of the back cover is damaged or deformed, have it replaced at DOCOMO-specified repair office.
- Waterproof is not effective while using the 1Seg antenna cable.

DOCOMO does not guarantee actual operations under all states. Malfunctions deemed to be caused by inappropriate operation by the customer are not covered by the warranty.

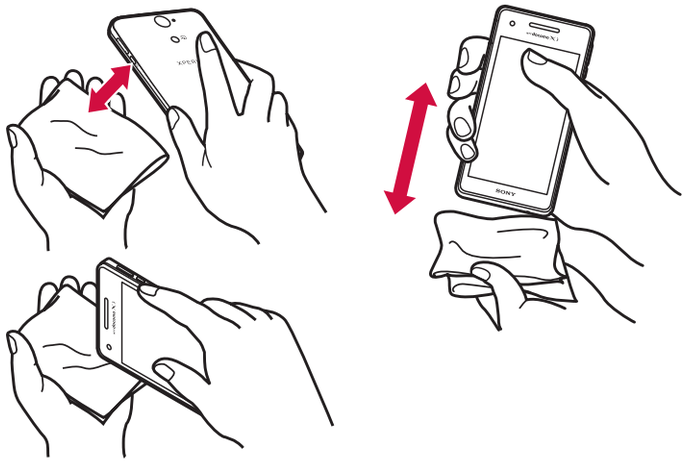
Draining water from the terminal

When the terminal is wet, water may flow out after wiping it off; drain the water in the following steps.

① Hold the terminal firmly and wipe off moisture on the terminal surface and back side with dry, clean cloth etc.

② Shake the terminal approximately 20 times, firmly holding it, until there is no more water splattering.

③ Swing the terminal in about 10 times against dry, clean cloth etc. to wipe off water remaining in the microphone, earpiece, speaker, power key, volume key, contacts for the desktop holder, each cover (microUSB jack cover/headset jack cover), etc.



④ Wipe off water drained from the terminal with dry, clean cloth etc., and dry naturally.

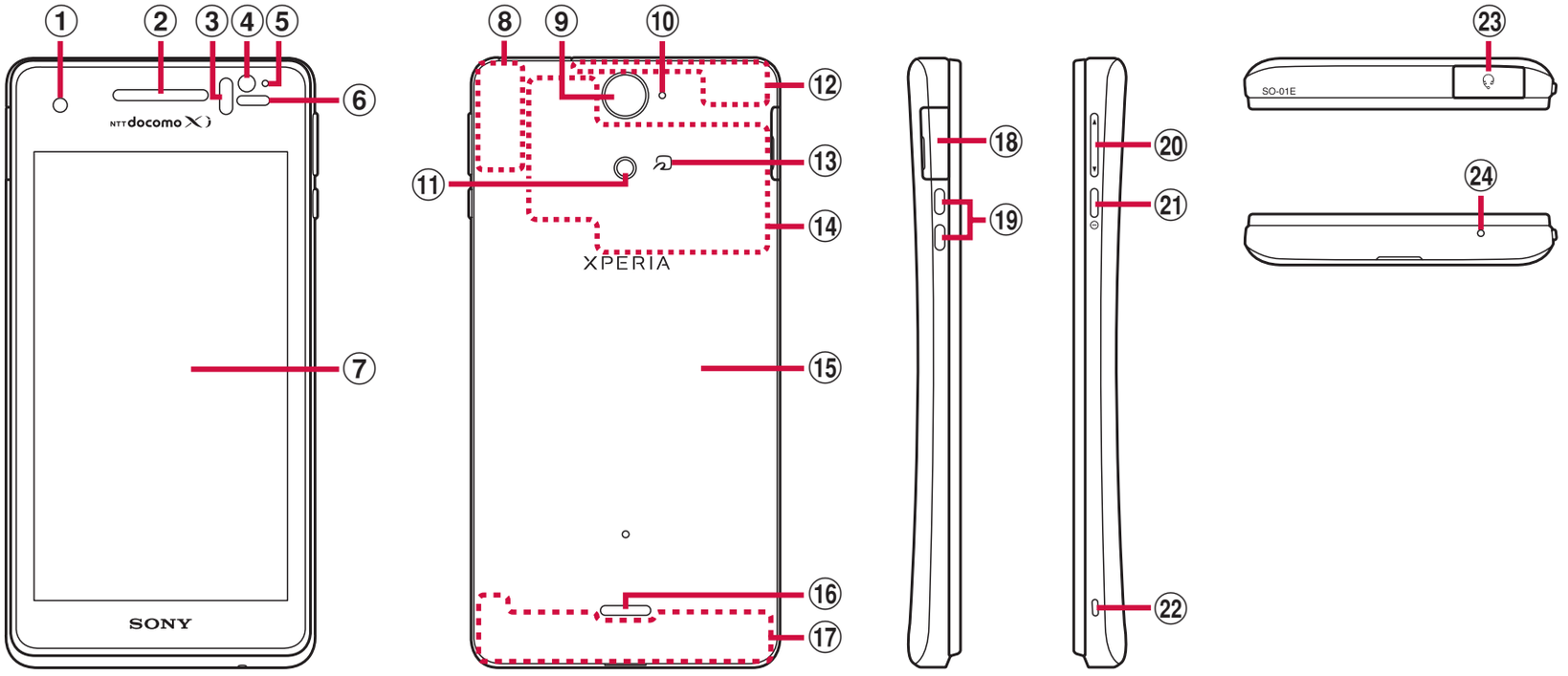
- Wipe off water drained from the terminal with dry, clean cloth etc., and dry naturally.
- Do not wipe off water remaining in gaps directly with a cotton swab etc.

Charging

Check the following before and after charging.

- Check if the terminal is not wet. Never charge the battery when the terminal is wet.
- Accessories and optional devices are not waterproof/dustproof.
- When charging the battery when or after the terminal is wet, adequately drain it and wipe off water with a dry, clean cloth etc., before connecting the supplied desktop holder or opening the microUSB jack cover.
- When the microUSB jack cover is opened for charging, close the cover firmly after charging. It is recommended to use the desktop holder for charging to prevent water or dust from seeping inside through the microUSB jack.
- Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a bathroom, shower room, kitchen, lavatory or other highly humid area. Doing so may cause fire or electric shock.
- Do not touch the AC adapter or desktop holder with wet hands. Doing so may cause electric shock.

Part names and functions



① Front camera lens
② Ear speaker
③ Infrared data port
④ Light sensor : Use for auto controlling of the screen brightness.
⑤ Notification LED
⑥ Proximity sensor : Turns on or off the touch screen to prevent misoperation during a call.
⑦ Touch screen
⑧ GPS antenna section*
⑨ Camera lens
⑩ Second microphone : Reduce noise to make easy to listen.
⑪ Flash/Photo light
⑫ FOMA/Xi/Wi-Fi/Bluetooth antenna section*
⑬ mark
⑭ NFC/FeliCa antenna section*
⑮ Back cover
⑯ Speaker
⑰ FOMA/Xi antenna section*
⑱ microUSB jack : Use for charging or connecting MHL (P.208).
⑲ Contacts for Desktop Holder
⑳ Volume key/Zoom key
㉑ Power key/Screen lock key
㉒ Strap hole
㉓ Headset jack
㉔ Microphone

* The antenna is built into the main body. Covering around the antenna with your hand may affect the quality of communications.

❖Note

- Do not put stickers etc. on each sensors.
- Do not peel off the silver sticker on the inner side of the back cover. Removal of the sticker may disable reading/writing of IC card.
- Do not peel off the round mesh sheet on the inner side of the back cover. Doing so makes waterproof ineffective.

docomo mini UIM card

The docomo mini UIM card is an IC card recorded user information such as your phone number etc.

- You can use the terminal with docomo mini UIM card. If you have a UIM or FOMA card, bring it to a docomo Shop to replace.
- When docomo mini UIM card is not inserted to the terminal, some functions are not available.
- For details on docomo mini UIM card, refer to the docomo mini UIM card manual.
- When inserting/removing the docomo mini UIM card, make sure to power off the terminal. Do not connect the AC adapter.

❖Information

- Please be careful not to touch or scratch a metal part (IC) when you handle the docomo mini UIM card. Doing so may cause malfunction or damage.

Security codes of the docomo mini UIM card

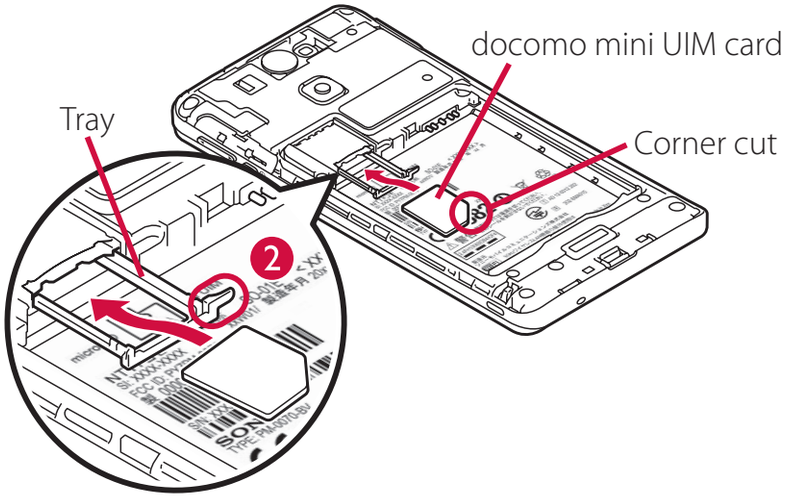
There is a security code called PIN code in the docomo mini UIM card. The code is set to "0000" at subscription, which you can change by yourself (P.146).

Inserting docomo mini UIM card

1 **Insert the tip of your finger into the groove at the bottom of the terminal, and lift up the back cover (P.26).**

2 **Remove the battery pack and microSD card, place the tip of your finger on the projection (❷) at the edge of the tray, and pull out the tray straight, then insert your docomo mini UIM card into the tray, with the metal (IC) part facing down, and then press the tray with the docomo mini UIM card straight to the end.**

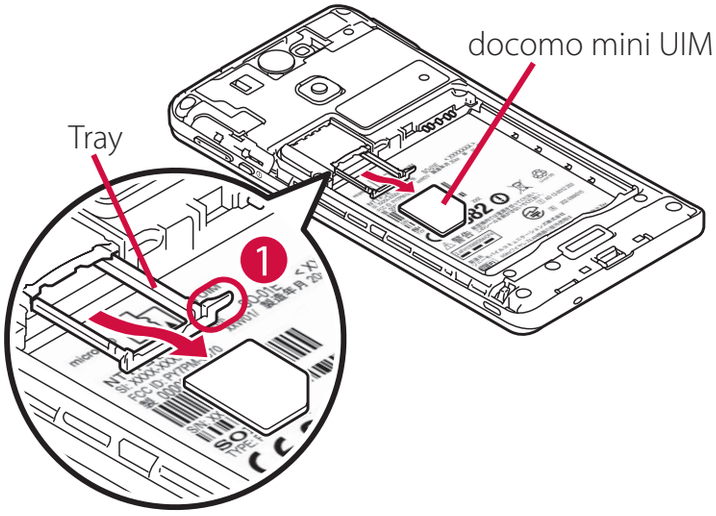
• Check the orientation of corner cut.



3 **Install the battery pack and microSD card, then attach the back cover, then make sure there are no gaps (P.26).**

Removing docomo mini UIM card

1 **Remove the back cover, the battery pack and microSD card, hook the tab (❶) on the tray with the tip of finger to pull out the tray straight, then take out the docomo mini UIM card.**



2 **Press the tray straight to the end, and install the battery pack and micro SD card, then attach the back cover, and then make sure there are no gaps (P.26).**

microSD card

You can use microSD card for any other compatible devices.

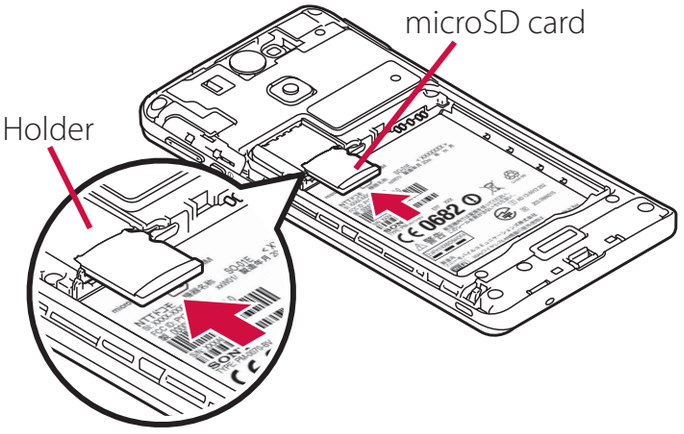
- The terminal supports microSD card of up to 2GB, and microSDHC card of up to 32GB (As of October, 2012).
- For compatible microSD cards, contact manufacturers of microSD cards.
- When inserting/removing a microSD card, make sure to power off the terminal. Do not connect the AC adapter.

Inserting microSD card

1 Insert the tip of your finger into the groove at the bottom of the terminal, and lift up the back cover (P.26).

2 Remove the battery pack, and check the orientation of microSD card to insert it slowly straight into the holder.

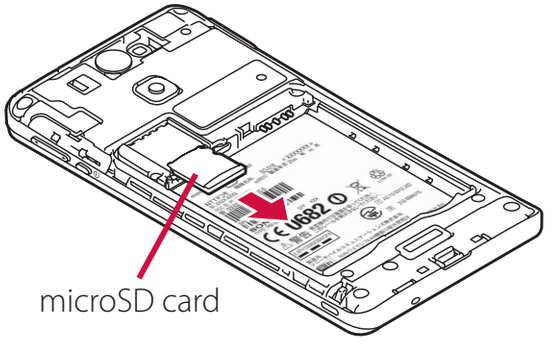
- Insert the microSD card with metal contacts side down.



3 Attach the battery pack and the back cover, then make sure there are no gaps (P.26).

Removing microSD card

1 Remove the back cover and the battery pack, and slide the microSD card out to remove while pressing it with the tip of finger.



2 Attach the battery pack and the back cover, then make sure there are no gaps (P.26).

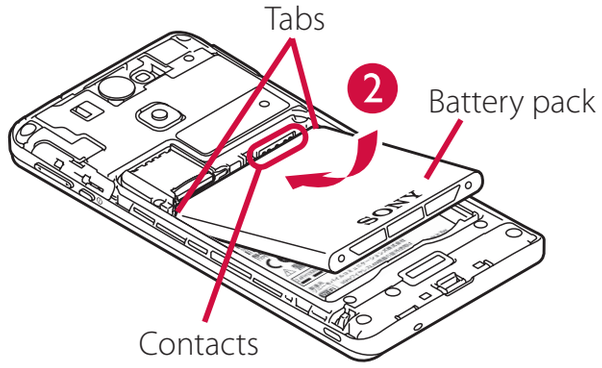
Battery pack

- When attaching/removing the battery pack, make sure to power off the terminal. Do not connect the AC adapter.

Attaching battery pack

1 **Insert the tip of your finger into the groove at the bottom of the terminal, and lift up the back cover (P.26).**

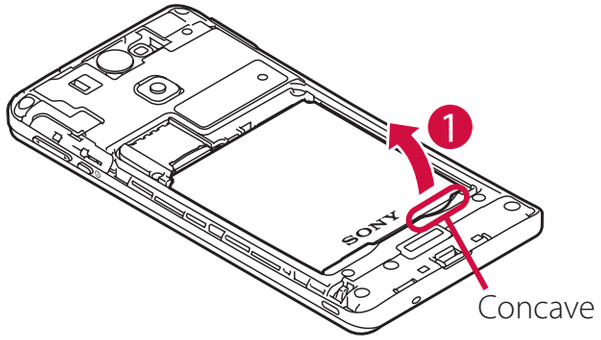
2 **Check the position of charging contacts of the battery back, and align the tabs of the terminal with those of the battery pack, then insert it in the direction of the arrow (❷).**



3 **Attach the back cover, then make sure there are no gaps (P.26).**

Removing battery pack

1 **Remove the back cover, and hook the battery pack with the tip of finger from the concave on the terminal, and pick it up in the direction of the arrow (❶) to remove.**



2 **Attach the back cover, then make sure there are no gaps (P.26).**

Charging

The battery pack is not full charged when you purchased the terminal.

Charging time

The following is the time for charging an empty battery pack. Charging under low temperature requires longer time.

AC Adapter 03 (Optional)	Approx. 160 min. (approx. 170 min. with Desktop Holder SO14)
DC Adapter 03 (Optional)	Approx. 180 min.

Operation time on full charge (estimate)

The following time varies by the battery pack condition or operating environment. For details, see (P.254).

Continuous stand-by time	FOMA/3G	Approx. 480 hours (stationary)
	GSM	Approx. 340 hours (stationary)
	LTE	Approx. 350 hours (stationary)
Continuous call time	FOMA/3G	Approx. 460 min.
	GSM	Approx. 440 min.

Battery pack life

- The battery pack is a consumable part. The usage duration of the battery per one charge decreases gradually each time the battery is recharged.
- When the usage duration per one charge becomes about half of a new battery pack, the life of the battery pack is assumed to be almost over. It is recommended that you replace the battery pack ahead of time.

Li-ion 00

Charging

- Always attach the SO-01E dedicated battery pack SO08 to charge.
- The AC Adapter 03 (optional) is compatible with AC 100 V to 240 V. For using the terminal overseas, a plug adapter that fits the electrical outlets in the country you stay is needed. Do not use an electrical transformer for overseas use to charge the terminal.
- It is recommended to use the AC Adapter 03 (optional) for charging.
- Insert and remove the microUSB cable slowly and evenly so that excessive force is not applied.

- When you start charging, notification LED on the terminal turns red/orange/green, and green light indicates that the battery level has reached 90 % or more. To check the status of charging, from the Home screen, tap and tap [Settings]▶[About phone]▶[Status] to see "Battery level". When charging is complete, battery level is displayed as "100%" at the status bar or "Battery level", and "Charged." appears on the unlock screen.
- When you start charging the battery with the terminal powered off, the power turns on. However, you cannot operate the terminal. Do not charge the battery in a place where the use is prohibited such as in airplane or hospital.

Do not charge the battery pack for a long time (several days)

- If you remain charging the terminal for a long time, the power supply starts from the battery pack after completion of charging. The usage time duration may be short. In that case, please charge it again correctly. For recharging, remove the terminal from the AC adapter and reconnect it again.

Charging with Desktop Holder

Use the compatible AC adapter for charging. If you use a charger other than the compatible AC adapter, charging may not be available or operations may not be performed correctly (P.239).
When using AC Adapter 03 (optional) for charging, do the following procedures.

1 Insert a microUSB plug of the microUSB cable into the microUSB jack of the supplied desktop holder with the USB symbol ( ) side facing up (❶).

2 Insert a USB plug of microUSB cable into the USB jack of the AC adapter and insert the plug of the AC adapter into the power outlet.

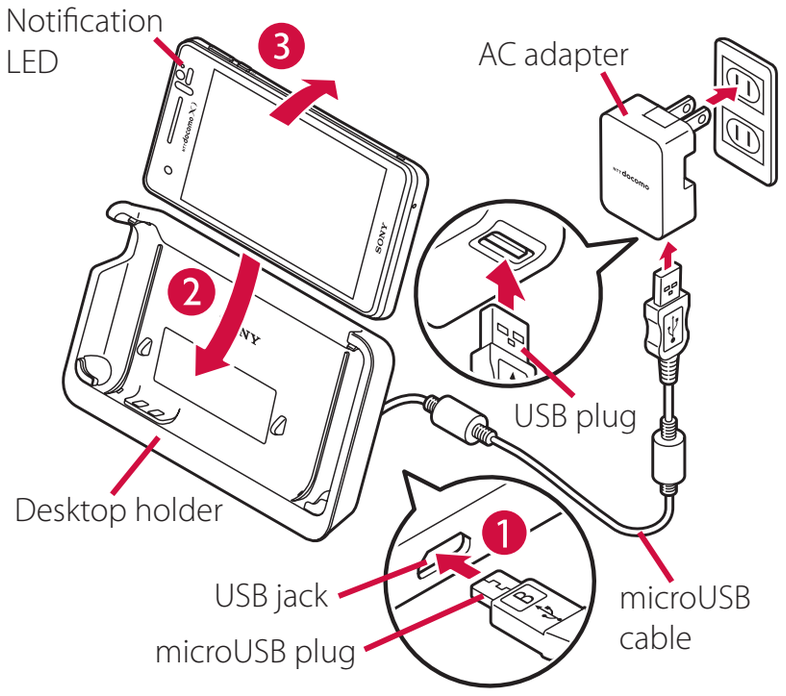
3 Insert the terminal in the direction of the arrow (❷), and attach it in the direction the arrow (❸).

- Notification LED lights on the terminal. For the notification LED for charging, see "Notification LED" (P.44).

4 When the charging is complete, remove the power plug from the power outlet and remove the terminal from the desktop holder.

❖Note

- You cannot charge the battery by connecting the desktop holder to a PC.
- If you connect the microUSB cable to the USB jack of the desktop holder for charging, the terminal is powered on and notification LED lights although the operations are not available. Be careful not to connect with the microUSB cable in a place where the use is prohibited such as in a airplane or hospital.
- Check the connecting direction to connect correctly. Wrong connection may cause damage.



Charging with AC adapter

Use the compatible AC adapter for charging. If you use a charger other than the compatible AC adapter, charging may not be available or operations may not be performed correctly (P.239).
When using AC Adapter 03 (optional) for charging, do the following procedures.

1 Open the microUSB jack cover and insert the microUSB plug of the microUSB cable straight into the microUSB jack of the terminal, with the USB symbol ( ) facing up.

2 Insert a USB plug of microUSB cable into the USB jack of the AC adapter and insert the plug of the AC adapter into the power outlet.

- Notification LED lights on the terminal. For notification LED for charging, see "Notification LED" (P.44).

3 When the charging is complete, remove the plug of the AC adapter from the power outlet.

4 Remove the microUSB plug of the microUSB cable from the terminal.

❖Note

- If you connect the microUSB cable to the USB jack of the terminal for charging, the terminal is powered on and notification LED lights although the operations are not available. Be careful not to connect the microUSB cable in a place where the use is prohibited such as in a airplane or hospital.

Charging with DC adapter

DC Adapter 03 (optional) supplies power from a car cigarette lighter socket (12 V/24 V). For details, refer to the DC Adapter 03 (optional) manual.

Charging with a PC

Use a compatible microUSB cable for charging. If you use a charger other than the compatible one, charging may not be available or operations may not be performed correctly (P.239).
When using Micro USB Cable 01 (optional) for charging, do the following procedures.

1 Open the microUSB jack cover and insert the microUSB plug of the microUSB cable straight into the microUSB jack of the terminal, with the USB symbol ( ) facing up.

2 Insert the USB plug of the microUSB cable into a USB port of a PC.

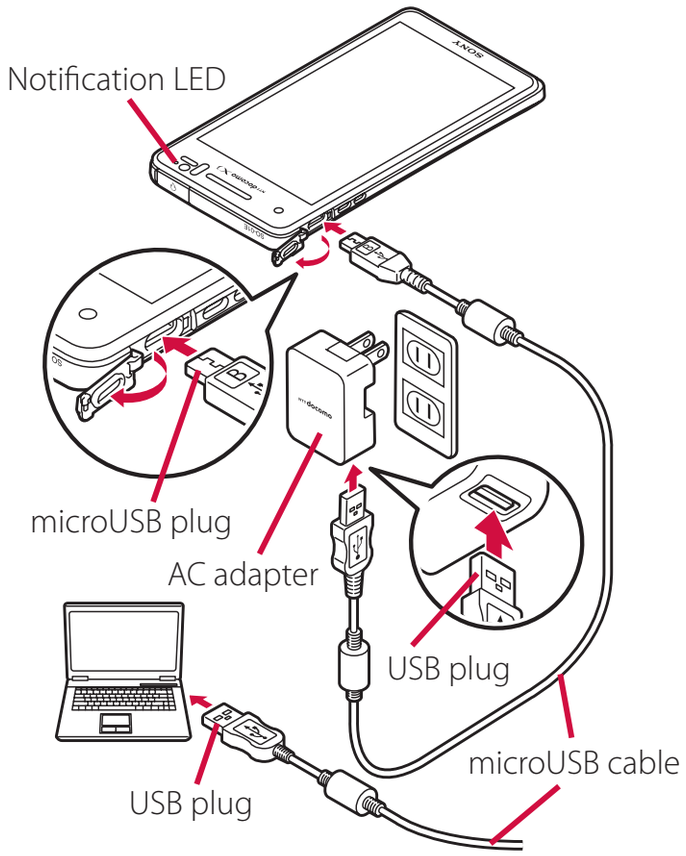
- Notification LED lights on the terminal. For the notification LED for charging, see "Notification LED" (P.44).
- When "PC Companion software" screen appears on the terminal, tap [Skip].
- When a screen for new hardware detection etc. appears on the PC, select "キャンセル (Cancel)".

3 When the charging is complete, remove the microUSB plug of the microUSB cable from the terminal.

4 Remove the USB plug of the microUSB cable from the USB port of the PC.

❖Note

- Installation of MTP driver to a PC is required to charge the battery with a Microsoft Windows XP PC, since "USB connection mode" is set to "Media transfer mode (MTP)" by default. Install Windows Media Player 10 or later to install MTP driver.
- If you connect the microUSB cable to the USB jack of the terminal for charging, the terminal is powered on and notification LED lights although the operations are not available. Be careful not to connect with the microUSB cable in a place where the use is prohibited such as in a airplane or hospital.
- Check the connecting direction to connect correctly. Wrong connection may cause damage.

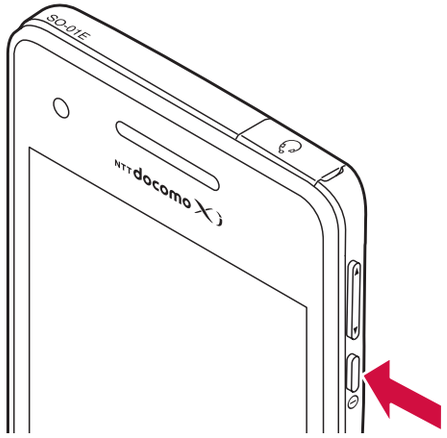


Turning power on/off

Turning power on

1 Press and hold ⏻ for over a second.

- The unlock screen appears.



2 Unlock the screen.

- For unlocking the screen by default, see "Unlocking the screen" (P.40).

❖Information

- The first time you turn on, the initial setting screen appears (P.40).
- If you have activated the screen lock (P.146) or SIM card lock (P.146), unlock screen/PIN code entry screen appears when turning power on. For unlocking the screen lock, see "Unlocking the screen lock" (P.147), and for PIN code entry, see "Entering the PIN code when powered on" (P.146).

Turning power off

1 Press and hold ⏻ for over a second.

2 Tap [Power off].

3 Tap [OK].

Setting screen lock

When the screen lock is set, the screen backlight turns off. You can avoid the touch screen or key from false operations.

- The screen is locked with turning the screen backlight off after the specified time duration.

1 Press ⏻.

❖Information

- Screen lock is set by default. For changing the screen lock, see "Changing screen unlock method" (P.147).
- For details on settings for turning the backlight off and the duration of time before the screen lock activation, see "Adjusting the idle time before the screen turns off" (P.132).

Unlocking the screen

Unlock screen appears when turning the power on or the backlight on by pressing ⏻.

1 On the unlock screen, tap 🔒.

❖Information

- On the unlock screen, tap 📷 to activate the camera and tap 🎙 to activate しゃべってコンシェル (Shabette concier).
- The screen lock can be disabled. For details, see "Canceling screen lock" (P.148).

Initial settings

The first time you turn on the terminal, follow the onscreen instructions for initial settings.

1 Tap [English (United States)]▶[Done], and tap ➔.

- After this step, follow the onscreen instructions to set up below, and tap ➔ or [Finish].
  - Select internet connection
  - Connect to a Wi-Fi network
  - Set accounts and auto-sync
  - Select preferred applications

2 Tap Next when initial setting screen for docomo service appears.

- After this step, follow the onscreen instructions to set up below, and tap Next.
  - Select whether to install all apps now or later
  - Select whether to set Osaifu-Keitai settings
  - Set docomo apps password settings
  - Set whether to respond when receive a request of location search

3 Tap [OK].

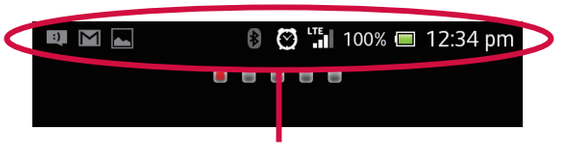
- Instruction guide for the Home screen appears. Tap [OK]/[Do not show this again] to display the Home screen.

❖Information

- To change the language later, from the Home screen, tap , then tap [Settings]▶[Language & input]▶[Language]. To set functions, from the Home screen, tap , then tap [Settings]▶[Setup guide]/[docomo service].
- Make sure that the data connection is available (LTE/3G/GPRS) or Wi-Fi network is connected before setting up online services. For checking the connection status, see "Status icon" (P.41).
- You can use the terminal without creating your Google account, however the services such as Google Talk, Gmail, Google Play, etc. are not available.

Status bar

A status bar appears at the top of the screen. In the status bar, the terminal status and notification are displayed. Notification icons appear on the left side, and the terminal status icons appear on the right side of the status bar.



Status bar

Status icon

The main status icons displayed on the screen are as follows.

	Signal strength
R	International roaming available
R	International roaming connected
	No signal
H	HSDPA available
H	Communicating in HSDPA
3G	3G (packet) available
3G	Communicating in 3G (packet)
LTE	LTE available
LTE	Communicating in LTE
	Connecting to Wi-Fi
	Communicating in Wi-Fi
	Connecting to Wi-Fi using Auto IP function

	Bluetooth function ON
	Connecting to Bluetooth device
	Airplane mode activated
	Silent mode (vibration) ON
	Silent mode (mute) ON
	Speakerphone ON
	Microphone set to mute
	Alarm is set
	Reader/Writer, P2P function ON
	Battery status
	The battery is charging
	PUK code locked or docomo mini UIM card not inserted

Notification icon

The main notification icons displayed on the screen are as follows.

	New email message
	New Gmail message
	New message (SMS)
	Problem with message (SMS) delivery
	New instant message
	New Area Mail
	Screenshot captured
	New Facebook message
	Uploading data to Facebook
	Uploading data to Facebook completed
	Facebook setting request notification
	Receiving/Downloading data
	Sending/Uploading data
	Bluetooth connection request notification
	Unmount microSD card (reading/writing unavailable)
	Preparing microSD card/internal storage
	Installation is completed (when installing applications from Google Play, etc.)
	Update notification (when update of the installed application from Google Play etc. notified)
	Software update notification
	Downloading software update
	Software update download or installation completed
	NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is set
	NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock set to the terminal or docomo mini UIM card
	Setting Omakase Lock
	Omakase Lock set to the terminal or docomo mini UIM card
	Making or receiving a call, during a call
	Calling with Bluetooth device
	Call on hold
	Missed call
	New voice mail
	Upcoming calendar event
	Stopwatch is running
	Timer is set
	Alarm sounding
	Playing a track with Media Player
	Playing a track with WALKMAN

	1Seg activated
	FM radio in use
	USB connected
	MHL connected
	Available to activate TV launcher
	Screen mirroring connected
	Communicating via Infrared
	Data communication invalid
	Wi-Fi open network available
	Connecting to a VPN
	The terminal set as media server/Connection request notification received
	Error message
	Warning message
	Problem with sync
	Setup guide unchecked
	Notification such as personal area received
	More (undisplayed) notifications
	Wi-Fi tethering set/Wi-Fi Direct connected
	Setting USB tethering
	Setting Wi-Fi tethering and USB tethering
	Setting Location-based Wi-Fi
	Positioning with GPS
	AUTO-GPS is set
	Green Heart energy saving icon (remove the AC adapter from the power outlet)
	Connecting headphones
	Setting Omakase Lock
	Available memory on the terminal is low

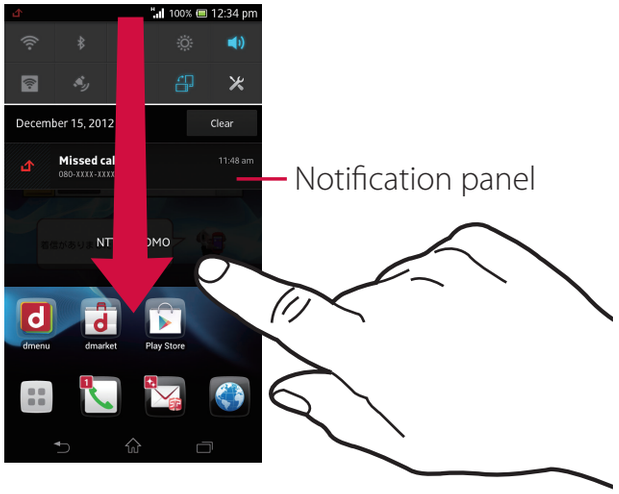
Notification panel

Notification icons are displayed in the Notification panel. You can open notifications, such as mails, reminders, or event notifications directly from the Notification panel.

Opening/Closing the Notification panel

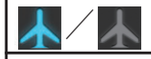
1 Drag the status bar downwards.

- Tap [↩] to close the notification panel.



❖Information

- Drag the status bar downwards to enable/disable silent mode or data communications.

	Enable/disable Wi-Fi function.
	Enable/disable Bluetooth function.
	Enable/disable data communication.
	Switch screen brightness.
	Enable/disable silent mode (Vibrate/Mute).
	Enable/disable Wi-Fi tethering function.
	Enable/disable GPS function.
	Enable/disable Airplane mode.
	You can set whether to switch portrait/landscape view automatically according to the terminal orientation.
	Display Settings menu (P.118).

Clearing contents on the Notification panel

1 On the Notification panel, tap [Clear].

❖Information

- Flick left or right a notification on the notification panel to delete from the list.
- Some notifications cannot be cleared.

Notification LED

Notification LED provides information on the terminal status, incoming/receiving, etc.

LED status

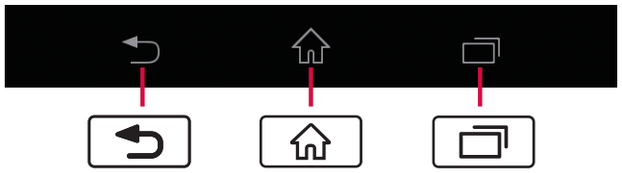
Status	Indication
Red	The battery is charging when the remaining battery level is 14% or less.
Flashing red	The remaining battery level is 14% or less.
Green	The battery is charging when the remaining battery level is 90% or more.
Flashing green	Received Gmail mails while backlight is off exist.
Flashing blue	While backlight is off, missed calls/ incoming messages (SMS) are notified.
Orange	The battery is charging when the remaining battery level is 15% - 89%.

❖Information

- If the battery level is not sufficient to activate when turning the power ON, press [⏻] to flash red.

Basic operations

Basic key icon operation



	Back	Go back to the previous screen. Or close a dialog box, an option menu, the Notification panel or a software keyboard.
	Home	Go to the Home screen.
	Small Apps	Display recently used applications in thumbnail list, activate or delete from the list. Also, use or set small apps (P.83).

* In this manual, each key icon operation is described with , , .

Using the touch screen

Precautions on using touch screen

- Touch screen is designed for being touched lightly with fingers. Do not push it forcibly with a finger or press it with sharp objects (nail, ballpoint pen, pin, etc.).
- Touching the touch screen may not work in the following cases. Note that it may cause malfunction.
  - Operation with gloved hands
  - Operation with tip of fingernail
  - Operation with foreign object on the screen
  - Operation with protective sheet or seal on the screen

Operations on the touch screen

Tap

Touch an item such as icon or menu with your finger lightly and release it.

- Double-tap means tapping twice quickly.

Touch and hold

Touch and hold an icon or menu item long.

Flick

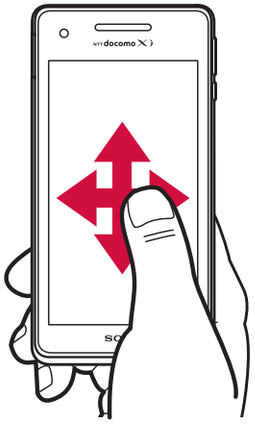
Touch the screen and flick up/down/left/right.

Drag

Touch the screen, drag to the desired position and release the finger.

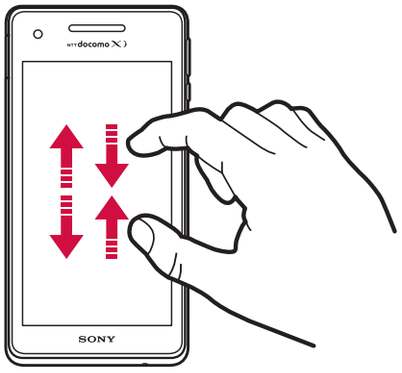
Scroll

When whole content cannot be displayed, flick up/down/left/right displayed content to scroll (move) the display position.



Pinch

Touch the screen with two fingers and widen (pinch-out) or narrow (pinch-in) the fingers' distance. On some screens, pinch-out to zoom in and pinch-in to zoom out.



Switching portrait/landscape view automatically

You can set the screen orientation to switch between landscape and portrait view automatically according to the terminal orientation.

1 Drag the status bar downwards.

2 Tap (gray).

- The setting is enabled. Tap (blue) to disable.

❖Information

- Even when you change the orientation of the terminal, the screen may not change to landscape view depending on the screen such as Home screen, etc.
- To switch the screen automatically between landscape and portrait view, from the Home screen, tap , then tap [Settings]▶[Display] and mark [Auto-rotate screen], or from the Home screen, tap , then tap [Settings]▶[Accessibility] and mark "Auto-rotate screen".

Capturing screenshot

You can save the current displayed screen as an image (screen shot).
You can check captured screen shots on the album (P.205).

1 On the screen you want to capture, press and hold ⏻ and lower of 🔉 for over a second at the same time.

- Screenshot is captured and appears in the status bar.

❖Information

- You can also capture a screenshot by pressing and holding ⏻ for over a second and then tapping [Take screenshot].

Marking/Unmarking to switch setting

When a checkbox/radio button is displayed besides a setting item, mark or unmark a checkbox/radio button to switch on/off for the setting.

	Switch on/off the setting for a checkbox.
	Switch on/off the setting for a radio button.
	Tap or drag left or right to switch on/off the setting.

Searching information in the terminal and web pages

Enter a word in the search box to browse the information in the terminal or on the Internet.

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Search].

- The software keyboard appears.

2 Enter a search word.

- Search suggestions appear as you enter a character. For character entry, see "Character entry" (P.49).
- To enter a new search word, tap .
- Tap at the right end of search item to enter a selected item and search again.

3 Tap a search item or .

- When you select an application from the search result, the application is activated.

❖Information

- When you use for the first time, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to use My location info for the Google search result or service. Read the terms of use and tap [OK].
- Tap on the software keyboard to input a search word by voice typing with "docomo voice input" or "Google voice typing".

Using Google voice search

Enter a search word by voice.

1 From the Home screen, tap on the Google search widget.

2 Speak a search word to the microphone.

3 Tap a search item.

❖Information

- When you use for the first time, a confirmation screen appears asking if you allow Google to use My location info. Select "OK" or "Cancel".
- When you change the language, the language setting screen for voice search appears. Tap [Settings] or [OK].

Search settings

You can set to use for search box or set search objectives in the terminal.

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Search].

2 Tap , then tap [Settings].

- Google search setting screen appears. You can set the following items.

Searchable items	Change the search range by marking/unmarking data categories (Google, Apps, Browser, Chrome, Contacts, docomo phonebook, Email, File Commander, Messaging, OfficeSuite, Play Movies & TV, WALKMAN) in the terminal.
Google Search	Set whether to display search options from Web history when a search word is entered, or delete a search history for contents or applications in the terminal. • You need to create your Google account.

Character entry

To enter characters, use the software keyboard which appears when you tap the character input box in a mail, phonebook, etc.

❖Information

- When the software keyboard is displayed, appears on the status bar.
- To return to the previous screen from the character entry screen, tap [⮌].
- Touch and hold a text in the character entry screen to display the enlarged text to check with dragging on the text.

Selecting input method

In the terminal, you can select Input method (keyboard type) from "Google voice typing", "Moji-Henshu", "Xperia™ Chinese keyboard", "Xperia™ Japanese keyboard" or "Xperia™ keyboard".

Google voice typing	Select to enter characters by voice input with Google voice typing.
Moji-Henshu	Select to enter characters by voice input with docomo voice typing.
Xperia™ Chinese keyboard	Select to enter Chinese.
Xperia™ Japanese keyboard	Select to enter Japanese.
Xperia™ keyboard	Select a language for text entry.

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Settings].

2 Tap [Language & input]▶[Default]▶[Xperia™ Chinese keyboard]/[Xperia™ Japanese keyboard]/[Xperia™ keyboard].

❖Information

- While entering characters, drag the status bar downwards and tap [Select input method] to select from "Google voice typing"/"Moji-Henshu"/"Xperia™ Chinese keyboard"/"Xperia™ Japanese keyboard"/"Xperia™ keyboard".

Software keyboard

For Japanese keyboard, there are 4 types of software keyboards: phonepad, QWERTY, Japanese syllabary and Kana handwriting input.

■ Phonepad keyboard

Portrait

Landscape

■ QWERTY keyboard

Portrait

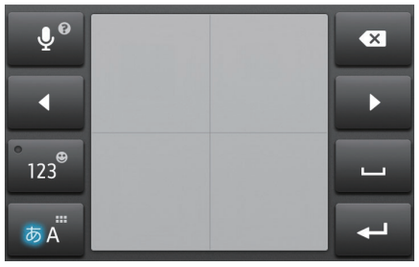
Landscape

Japanese syllabary keyboard

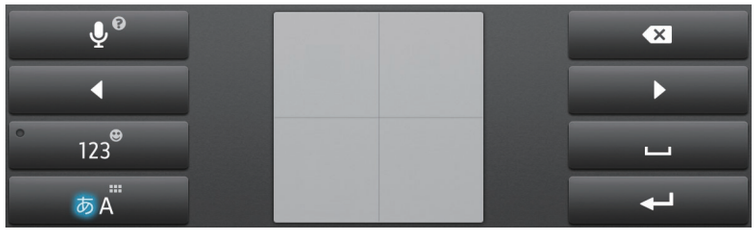
Portrait

Landscape

Kana handwriting input



Portrait



Landscape

❖Information

- The key display of software keyboard varies depending on the entry screen, character mode or settings.

Changing keyboard or settings

1 On a character entry screen, touch and hold あA.

2 Tap 📱 / ⌨ / ▦ / ✍ / 🔧 / 🧩 / 半全 / ⌨.

- 📱 : The phonepad keyboard appears.
- ⌨ : The QWERTY keyboard appears.
- ▦ : The Japanese syllabary keyboard appears.
- ✍ : The Kana handwriting input appears.
- Tap 🔧 to display Japanese keyboard settings screen and you can check/change the settings.
- Tap 🧩 to display the extensions list.
- 半全 : Switch one-byte/two-byte character.
- ⌨ : Hide the software keyboard.

❖Information

- By default, the phonepad keyboard for portrait screen is set and QWERTY keyboard for landscape screen is set. Also, "Auto capitalization", "Word suggestions" and "Spell check" are set to on.

Entering characters on the phonepad keyboard

Enter characters using a keyboard with characters allocated in the same arrangement as general cell phones. Flick input or toggle input is used for character entry.

Icon	Function
あA / あA	Each time you tap, the character mode switches "Hiragana/Kanji" → "Alphanumeric" in order and a status icon, あ → a / A / a appears in the status bar.
あA / あA Touch and hold	Display a pop-up window. / / / : Keyboard switch : Display the setting screen for Japanese keyboard : Display the extensions list 半全 (two-byte)/ 半全 (one-byte) : Switch character mode : Hide the software keyboard
123 / 123	Each time you tap, the character mode switches "Hiragana/Kanji/alphabets" → "Number" in order and a status icon, あ / A, etc. → 1 / 1 appears in the status bar.
123 / 123 Touch and hold	Enter one-byte/two-byte symbols from the displayed list. Switch the tab to enter facemarks from the displayed list (a pictogram tab and deco-mail tab are also displayed when entering in sp-mode mail).

Icon	Function
英数 カナ	Appears before fixing character in Hiragana/Kanji input mode. It displays alphanumeric or katakana conversion candidates assigned to tapped key.
取消	Appears after conversion is fixed to return to text before conversion.
◂	Move the cursor*1 : To the left. Touch and hold to move continuously. Or change the range for conversion.
▸	Move the cursor*1 : To the right. Touch and hold to move continuously. Or change the range for conversion. When there is an unfixed character string with the cursor at the right end, tap to enter the same character as the one at the end.
↵	Before the conversion is fixed, "確定 (Fix)" is displayed*2, and fixes the entering characters or conversion characters. When characters are already fixed, enter a line feed at the cursor position.
⌫	Delete the character before the cursor. Touch and hold to delete continuously.
␣	When any character is entered or after entered character is fixed, a space can be entered. Touch and hold to input spaces continuously.
🎤	Enter characters by voice input with "docomo voice input" or "Google voice typing". A candidate list appears. Tap the character string you want to enter.

Icon	Function
Touch and hold	Display the available extensions list.
逆順	Display the previous character (opposite order).
候補	In Hiragana/Kanji input mode, highlight and select word in conversion candidates. Tap continuously to change a word highlighted in conversion candidates and select a word to enter.
候補 Touch and hold	Activate online dictionary. You need to mark "Online dictionary" checkbox in the Japanese keyboard setting screen.
全角 / 全角	Appears when entering numbers, tap to switch one-byte/two-byte character.

*1 When any characters are entered, just tap the desired position on the entered character string to move the cursor.

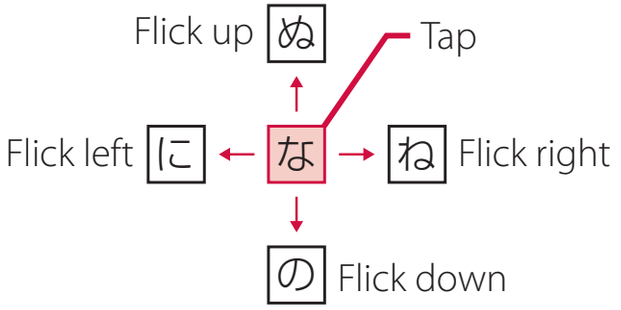
*2 In some screens such as the mail account registration screen, "次へ (Next)", "完了 (Done)", "実行 (Go)", etc. appear.

Settings of entry

Flick input

Flick up/down/left/right to enter characters in each column of kana syllabary.

- **Ex: Entering characters in "な" column**
  You can enter "な" only by tapping. Flick left for "に", up for "ぬ", right for "ね" and down for "の".



- To switch upper/lower case or change to voiced sound, flick or tap 大⇔小.
- Flick input is available by default. When not using it, you can cancel by the following operations.
  ① On a character entry screen, touch and hold あA.
  ② Tap 🔧.

③ [On-screen keyboard settings]▶Unmark "Flick input" checkbox.

- To change sensitivity of the flick input, on a character entry screen, touch and hold あA, tap ✕ and [On-screen keyboard settings]▶[Sensitivity of flick input], then select "High"/"Medium (default)"/"Low".

Toggle entry

Tap the same key continuously to enter the assigned character.

To enter characters assigned to the same key continuously, operate the followings.

- **Ex: To enter "あお"**
  ① Tap "あ" once.
  ② Tap ▸, and tap "あ" 5 times.
- **Ex: To enter "ca"**
  ① Tap "abc" 3 times.
  ② Tap ▸*.
  ③ Tap "abc" once.
  * In some applications, tap A↔a in Step ②.

- To switch upper/lower case or change to voiced/semi-voiced sound, tap "゜大↔小.
- Multitap text input is available by default. When not using it, you can cancel by the following operations.
  ① On a character entry screen, touch and hold あA.
  ② Tap ✕.
  ③ [On-screen keyboard settings]▶Unmark "Multitap text input" checkbox.

❖Information

- In case of Multitap text input, when the tapped key's highlighter goes off and you can enter a character assigned to the same key consecutively without tapping ▸.

Entering characters on the QWERTY keyboard

Enter characters using a keyboard with characters allocated in the same arrangement as general PCs. Enter Japanese in Roman character.

Icon	Function
あA / あA	Each time you tap, the character mode switches "Hiragana/Kanji" → "Alphanumeric" in order and a status icon, あ → a / A / Ä / a / A / Ä appears in the status bar.
あA / あA Touch and hold	Display a pop-up window. / / / : Keyboard switch : Display the setting screen for Japanese keyboard : Display the extensions list 半全 (two-byte)/ 半全 (one-byte) : Switch character mode : Hide the software keyboard
123 / 123	Each time you tap, the character mode switches "Hiragana/Kanji/alphabets" → "Number/symbol" in order and a status icon, あ / A, etc. → 1 / 1 appears in the status bar.
123 / 123 Touch and hold	Enter one-byte/two-byte symbols from the displayed list. Switch the tab to enter facemarks from the displayed list (a pictogram tab and deco-mail tab are also displayed when entering in sp-mode mail).

Icon	Function
	Move the cursor*1 : To the left. Touch and hold to move continuously. Or change the range for conversion.
	Move the cursor*1 : To the right. Touch and hold to move continuously. Or change the range for conversion. When there is an unfixed character string with the cursor at the right end, tap to enter the same character as the one at the end.
	Before the conversion is fixed, "確定 (Fix)" is displayed*2, and fixes the entering characters or conversion characters. When characters are already fixed, enter a line feed at the cursor position.
	Delete the character before the cursor. Touch and hold to delete continuously.
	When any character is entered or after entered character is fixed, a space can be entered. Touch and hold to input spaces continuously.
	Enter characters by voice input with "docomo voice input" or "Google voice typing". A candidate list appears. Tap the character string you want to enter.
Touch and hold	Display the available extensions list.
英数カナ	Appears before fixing character in Hiragana/Kanji input mode. It displays alphabet or katakana conversion candidates assigned to tapped key.

Icon	Function
⇧ / ⇧ / ⇧	In alphanumerics input mode, tap to switch capitalization/upper case/lower case.
候補	In Hiragana/Kanji input mode, highlight and select word in conversion candidates. Tap continuously to change a word highlighted in conversion candidates and select a word to enter.
候補 Touch and hold	Activate online dictionary. You need to mark "Online dictionary" checkbox in the Japanese keyboard setting screen.
全角 / 全角	Appears in number input mode. Tap to switch numbers or symbols to one-byte/two-byte characters.

*1 When any characters are entered, just tap the desired position on the entered character string to move the cursor.

*2 In some screens such as the mail account registration screen, "次へ (Next)", "完了 (Done)", "実行 (Go)", etc. appear.

Selecting an assistant keyboard

When you enter in Hiragana/Kanji input mode using the QWERTY keyboard, you can change the assistant keyboard to make the frequent using keys to be displayed widely for easy tapping.

1 On a character entry screen, touch and hold あA.

2 Tap ✕.

3 Tap [On-screen keyboard settings]▶[Choose key type].

4 Tap any of [Static key resizing]/[Key highlight while typing]/[Dynamic key resizing with highlight]/[Off].

Static key resizing

Widen frequent using key for easy tapping.

Key highlight while typing

Widen frequent using key and highlight the key that is predicted for the next entry.

Dynamic key resizing with highlight

Widen the key that is predicted for the next entry much further and highlight it.

Off

Display equally the width of each key.

Changing display keys

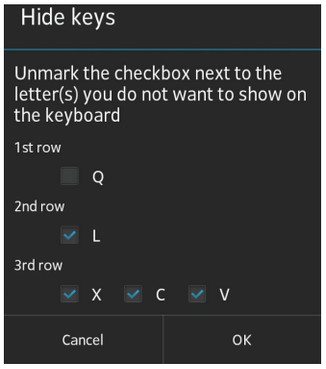
You can set not to display less-frequent-used keys (Q, X, C, etc.) on the QWERTY keyboard.

1 On a character entry screen, touch and hold あA.

2 Tap .

3 Tap [On-screen keyboard settings]▶[Hide keys].

- When the Choose key type (P.56) is set to "Off", "Hide keys" cannot be selected.



4 Unmark the checkbox of the key you want to hide.

5 Tap [OK].

Customizing keyboard

You can change symbols which are displayed in QWERTY keyboard when entering number to desired characters/symbols.

1 On a character entry screen, touch and hold あA.

2 Tap ✕.

3 Tap [On-screen keyboard settings]▶[Keyboard customization].

4 Tap a symbol you want to change and delete character previously set, then enter a character to display and tap [OK].

- Only one character (two-byte or one-byte character) can be entered.

5 Tap [OK].

❖Information

- To return to the default status, in Step 3, tap ⋮, then tap [Reset]▶[OK].

Entering characters on the Japanese syllabary keyboard

You can use the software keys arranged according to the Japanese syllabary.

Icon	Function
あA / あA	Each time you tap, the character mode switches "Hiragana/Kanji" → "Alphanumeric" in order and a status icon, あ → a / A / Ȧ / a / A / Ȧ appears in the status bar.
あA / あA Touch and hold	Display a pop-up window. / / / : Keyboard switch : Display the setting screen for Japanese keyboard : Display the extensions list 半全 (two-byte)/ 半全 (one-byte) : Switch character mode : Hide the software keyboard
"° 大↔小	Appears in Hiragana/Kanji input mode. Switch upper/lower case or add voiced sound/semi-voiced sound.
123 / 123	Each time you tap, the character mode switches "Hiragana/Kanji/alphabets" → "Number" in order and a status icon, あ / A, etc. → 1 / 1 appears in the status bar.

Icon	Function
123 / 123 Touch and hold	Enter one-byte/two-byte symbols from the displayed list. Switch the tab to enter facemarks from the displayed list (a pictogram tab and deco-mail tab are also displayed when entering in sp-mode mail).
◀	Move the cursor*1 : To the left. Touch and hold to move continuously. Or change the range for conversion.
▶	Move the cursor*1 : To the right. Touch and hold to move continuously. Or change the range for conversion. When there is an unfixed character string with the cursor at the right end, tap to enter the same character as the one at the end.
↵	Before the conversion is fixed, "確定 (Fix)" is displayed*2, and fixes the entering characters or conversion characters. When characters are already fixed, enter a line feed at the cursor position.
⌫	Delete the character before the cursor. Touch and hold to delete continuously.
␣	When any character is entered or after entered character is fixed, a space can be entered. Touch and hold to input spaces continuously.
🎤	Enter characters by voice input with "docomo voice input" or "Google voice typing". A candidate list appears. Tap the character string you want to enter.

Icon	Function
🎤 Touch and hold	Display the available extensions list.
⇧ / ⇧ / ⇧	In alphanumerics input mode, tap to switch capitalization/upper case/lower case or switch allocated symbol type.
候補	In Hiragana/Kanji input mode, highlight and select word in conversion candidates. Tap continuously to change a word highlighted in conversion candidates and select a word to enter.
候補 Touch and hold	Activate online dictionary. You need to mark "Online dictionary" checkbox in the Japanese keyboard setting screen.
☺	Appears in landscape mode, and you can enter one-byte/two-byte symbols from the displayed list. Switch the tab to enter facemarks from the displayed list (a pictogram tab and deco-mail tab are also displayed when entering in sp-mode mail).

*1 When any characters are entered, just tap the desired position on the entered character string to move the cursor.

*2 In some screens such as the mail account registration screen, "次へ (Next)", "完了 (Done)", "実行 (Go)", etc. appear.

Entering characters on the Kana handwriting input

Enter characters by tracing characters on the Kana handwriting area.

Icon	Function
あA / あA	Each time you tap, the character mode switches "Hiragana/Kanji" → "Alphanumeric" in order and a status icon, あ → a / A / a appears in the status bar.
あA / あA Touch and hold	Display a pop-up window. / / / : Keyboard switch : Display the setting screen for Japanese keyboard : Display the extensions list 半全 (two-byte)/ 半全 (one-byte) : Switch character mode : Hide the software keyboard
大⇔小	Appears in Hiragana/Kanji input mode. Switch upper/lower case or add voiced sound/semi-voiced sound.
A⇔a	Appears in alphanumerics input mode, tap to switch upper case and lower case.
123 / 123	Each time you tap, the character mode switches "Hiragana/Kanji/alphabets" → "Number" in order and a status icon, あ / A, etc. → 1 / 1 appears in the status bar.
123 / 123 Touch and hold	Enter one-byte/two-byte symbols from the displayed list. Switch the tab to enter facemarks from the displayed list (a pictogram tab and deco-mail tab are also displayed when entering in sp-mode mail).
英数 カナ	Appears before fixing character in Hiragana/Kanji input mode. It displays alphanumeric or katakana conversion candidates assigned to entered characters.
取消	Appears after conversion is fixed to return to text before conversion.
◀	Move the cursor*1 : To the left. Touch and hold to move continuously. Or change the range for conversion.
▶	Move the cursor*1 : To the right. Touch and hold to move continuously. Or change the range for conversion. When there is an unfixed character string with the cursor at the right end, tap to enter the same character as the one at the end.
↵	Before the conversion is fixed, "確定 (Fix)" is displayed*2, and fixes the entering characters or conversion characters. When characters are already fixed, enter a line feed at the cursor position.
⌫	Delete the character before the cursor. Touch and hold to delete continuously.

Icon	Function
␣	When any character is entered or after entered character is fixed, a space can be entered. Touch and hold to input spaces continuously.
	Enter characters by voice input with "docomo voice input" or "Google voice typing". A candidate list appears. Tap the character string you want to enter.
Touch and hold	Kana handwriting input guide in the POBox Touch User Guide (Japanese) activates and you can view the detailed explanations on the Kana handwriting input.
候補	In Hiragana/Kanji input mode, highlight and select word in conversion candidates. Tap continuously to change a word highlighted in conversion candidates and select a word to enter.
候補 Touch and hold	Activate online dictionary. You need to mark "Online dictionary" checkbox in the Japanese keyboard setting screen.
☻	Appears when entering number. Enter one-byte/two-byte symbols from the displayed list. Switch the tab to enter facemarks from the displayed list (a pictogram tab and deco-mail tab are also displayed when entering in sp-mode mail).

*1 When any characters are entered, just tap the desired position on the entered character string to move the cursor.

*2 In some screens such as the mail account registration screen, "次へ (Next)", "完了 (Done)", "実行 (Go)", etc. appear.

❖Information

- When you enter character by Kana handwriting for the first time, read a guidance and tap [OK].
- In Kana handwriting input, hiragana, alphabet, number, some symbols can be entered.
- You can enter a character continuously without deleting entered character.
- For voiced sound and semi voiced sound mark, enter in the right upper part of the Kana handwriting input screen.
- For punctuation mark and lower case, enter in the lower part from the center of the Kana handwriting input screen.
- For entering alphabet, enter it with reference to lower horizontal line of the Kana handwriting input screen.

Editing text

In the character entry screen such as mail, phonebook, etc., double-tap text you want to edit so that text edit menu appears at the top of the screen. Drag or to change the character string to select.

(Select all)	Select all entered text.
(Cut)	Cut a selected character string.
(Copy)	Copy a selected character string.
(Paste)	Paste a copied/cut character string.
(Complete)	Close the edit menu.

❖Information

- To paste a copied or cut character string, touch and hold a position where you want to insert, then tap [PASTE]. Alternatively, when texts are entered, tap a position where you want to insert, then tap and [PASTE].
- Edit menu icons vary by applications.

Setting character entry

For each input method, you can make settings related to character entry.

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Settings]▶[Language & input].

2 Tap on "Google voice typing"/"Moji-Henshu"/"Xperia™ Chinese keyboard"/"Xperia™ Japanese keyboard"/"Xperia™ keyboard".

- Settings screen for respective input method appears. Tap an item displayed on the screen to set.

❖Information

- The items vary depending on the input method.

Setting Xperia™ Japanese keyboard

Displaying the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Settings]▶[Language & input].

2 Tap on "Xperia™ Japanese keyboard".

- The setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard appears.

❖Information

- Alternatively, on a character entry screen, touch and hold and tap to display the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard.

Common settings of software keyboard

Make keyboard settings such as Key sound, Vibrate, etc.

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [On-screen keyboard settings].

- Set items for "COMMON ON-SCREEN KEYBOARD SETTINGS".

Sound on keypress	Set whether to sound at the time of key tapping.
Vibration on keypress	Set whether to vibrate at the time of key tapping.
Pop-up on keypress	Set to pop up the key you have tapped at the time of key tapping.
No. of lines (portrait)	Set number of lines for conversion candidates displayed in portrait mode.
No. of lines (landscape)	Set number of lines for conversion candidates displayed in landscape mode.

❖Information

- By default, conversion candidates are displayed in 2 lines in portrait/landscape screen.

Auto capitalization

Set to capitalize automatically the top letter you enter in one-byte alphabet entry mode.

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, mark "Auto capitalization".

❖Information

- The top letter may not always be capitalized automatically in one-byte alphabet entry mode when "Auto capitalization" is marked.

Setting voice input

Set voice input to "docomo voice input" or "Google voice typing".

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [Voice typing].

2 Tap [docomo voice input]/[Google voice typing].

❖Information

- "docomo voice input" is set by default. Tap on the software keyboard to change to "Google voice typing".

Keeping keyboard type

Set to stabilize the last status of keyboard (phonepad/QWERTY/Japanese syllabary keyboard/Kana handwriting input) in the each portrait/landscape screen in kana/alphabet/number input mode.

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [On-screen keyboard settings].

2 Mark [Keep keyboard type] checkbox.

❖Information

- You can set to stabilize the last status of keyboard in the each portrait/landscape screen without marking "Keep keyboard type".

Setting keyboard skin

You can change software keyboard skin.

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [Keyboard skin].

2 Select from displayed keyboards and tap [Set skin].

❖Information

- To download and add keyboard skins from a website, tap [Search for skin] in Step 2. Some keyboard skins downloaded from website may not support the terminal.
- To delete the downloaded keyboard skin, from the Home screen, tap , and tap [Settings]▶[Apps]▶"Downloaded" tab, and tap the keyboard skin you want to delete, and then tap [Uninstall]▶[OK]▶[OK]. Also, tap [Uninstall] in Step 2 so that you can delete the keyboard skin that is not compatible with the terminal.

Word suggestion settings

The Word suggestion function shows predicted conversion candidates when you enter Japanese/English characters. Mark the checkbox of Word suggestion checkbox to set "Spell check" and "Auto space". That helps you entering characters with ease.

Setting Word suggestion

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, mark "Word suggestions".

❖Information

- Flick or drag downward in the word suggestion field to enlarge suggestion field in which you can see more word suggestions and to hide the keyboard.
  Tap [前候補 (previous suggestion)]/[次候補 (next suggestion)]/[確定 (fix)] shown at the bottom of the word suggestions screen to select/fix characters to be entered. To show the software keyboard, tap [戻る (Back)] or .

Setting Spell check

Spell check corrects mistyped characters and shows conversion candidates before conversion in one-byte alphabet input mode when entering characters with QWERTY keyboard or Japanese syllabary keyboard.

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, mark "Spell check".

Setting Auto space

When selecting English word suggestion, Auto space enters next to the entered character. However, space is not entered automatically in the mail address or URL input fields.

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, mark "Auto space".

User dictionary settings

To display the word as the preferred candidate when entering characters, set the user dictionary beforehand.

Registering words in user dictionaries

There are 2 types of user dictionaries: "My words Japanese" and "My words English".

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [My words Japanese]/[My words English].

2 Tap ⋮ and [Add].

3 Tap the character input box for "Reading" and fill it out.

4 Enter a word in the input box for "Word" and tap [完了 (Done)].

5 Tap [Save].

❖Information

- Up to 50 characters (regardless of one-byte or two-byte characters) can be stored for a "Reading" and "Word", and up to 500 items can be stored in the user dictionary.
- When entering characters, tapping [直変 (Direct conversion)] in the word suggestion field may give priority to some registered words.
- Added user dictionary can be edited or deleted. To edit, select an added user dictionary and tap ⋮, then tap [Edit] for editing and tap [Save]. To delete, select an added user dictionary and tap ⋮, then tap [Delete]▶[Delete]. To delete all user dictionary, tap ⋮, then tap [Delete all]▶[Delete].

Setting Words by learning

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [Learn words].

2 Mark "Save words while typing".

- To reset already learned words, tap [Delete saved words]▶[Delete].

❖Information

- To delete history for learned words individually, touch and hold a word you want to delete and tap [Delete].

Setting online dictionary

In Hiragana/Kanji input mode, touch and hold 候補 to activate online dictionary.

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [Online dictionary].

2 Tap [Online dictionary], then read the note and tap [Agree].

- "Online dictionary" is marked.

Backing up and restoring dictionary

User dictionary and Words by learning can be backed up onto an internal storage and restored when needed.

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [Backup & restore].

2 Tap [Backup]/[Restore].

3 Mark a dictionary to back up/ restore.

- Select "My words Japanese"/"My words English"/"Learn words".

4 Tap [Go].

- When backing up, a screen asking whether to overwrite the user dictionary on the internal storage appears. When restoring, a screen asking whether to overwrite the user dictionary in the terminal appears.

5 Tap [OK]▶[OK].

- The data is backed up or restored.

❖Information

- If restoring data is failed, user dictionary in the terminal restores to the default. Restore by operating again.
- User dictionary and Words by learning are not backed up onto microSD card.

Using extensions

You can use or add extensions when entering characters.

Using Contact Picker 2.3

If contacts are registered to the Contacts, you can use "Contact Picker 2.3" to enter contact information when entering characters.

1 On a character entry screen, touch and hold .

2 Tap .

3 Tap [Contact Picker 2.3]►"Contacts" tab.

4 Tap the contact to pick up.

- When you enter a name or reading in the search box at the top of the screen, a list of contacts appears accordingly.

5 Mark items you want to enter and tap [OK].

- If you want to select/deselect all items, tap [Mark all]/[Unmark all].

❖Information

- "History" tab displays contacts that are picked up when entering characters.

Adding an extension

You can install extensions to use when entering characters.

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [Manage extensions].

2 On the how to start extensions screen, tap [OK].

- Extensions settings screen appears.

3 Tap [Download new extensions].

- Extensions list screen appears.

4 Tap an application and follow the onscreen instructions.

❖Information

- Marked extensions in the extensions settings screen can be activated in the character entry screen. The preinstalled extension "Contact Picker 2.3" is marked by default.

POBox Touch User Guide

You can view the detailed explanations on the high performance Xperia™ Japanese keyboard from the basic to application. The latest information can be obtained from the websites for extensions or keyboard skins.

1 On the setting screen for Xperia™ Japanese keyboard, tap [POBox Touch User Guide].

- POBox Touch User Guide appears.

❖Information

- Alternatively, touch and hold in the Kana handwriting input screen to activate the Kana handwriting input guide in the POBox Touch User Guide (Japanese) to view the detailed explanations on the handwritten input.

USB keyboard/Bluetooth keyboard

Connect USB keyboard or Bluetooth keyboard that supports HID (Human Interface Device) profile with the terminal to enter characters.

❖Information

- Some Bluetooth keyboards compatible with HID profiles cannot be used or may not operate properly.
- Use USB keyboard or Bluetooth keyboard with key order that is compatible with 106 keyboard/109 keyboard.
- Tap the character input box to display あ or A on the status bar of the terminal, then enter characters with USB keyboard or Bluetooth keyboard.
- Press "半角/全角 (one-byte/two-byte)" key on USB keyboard or Bluetooth keyboard to switch Kana input/Alphabet input on the terminal.
- While displaying word suggestions, press "Tab" key/ "↓" key on the USB keyboard or the Bluetooth keyboard to select a word in word suggestions.
- While not selecting a word in word suggestions, press "Space" key on the USB keyboard or the Bluetooth keyboard to switch to direct conversion.
- You can edit texts with connected USB keyboard or the Bluetooth keyboard. For instructions on editing texts on the terminal, see "Editing text" (P.61).
  - Press "Ctrl" key and "A" key to select all entered text.
  - Press "Shift" key and "←" key or "Shift" key and "→" key to partly select entered text from cursor.
  - Press "Ctrl" key and "X" key to cut a selected character string.

  - Press "Ctrl" key and "C" key to copy a selected character string.
  - Press "Ctrl" key and "V" key to paste a copied or cut character string.
- While displaying word suggestions, press "Shift" key/ "Alt" key on the USB keyboard or the Bluetooth keyboard to activate Online dictionary. You need to mark "Online dictionary" checkbox in the Japanese keyboard setting screen beforehand.
- Current conversion candidate settings (word prediction/direct conversion/alphanumeric conversion/online dictionary) are displayed between character input field and conversion candidate field and selection method for conversion candidate is displayed.
- While displaying word suggestions, press "Function" key on the USB keyboard or the Bluetooth keyboard to convert to hiragana/katakana/alphabet.
  - Press "F6" to convert to hiragana.
  - Press "F7" to convert to two-byte katakana.
  - Press "F8" to convert to one-byte katakana.
  - Press "F9" to convert to two-byte alphabet.
  - Press "F10" to convert to one-byte alphabet.

Home screen

Home screen is a start screen for using applications. You can personalize the Home screen by adding or moving, for example, application shortcuts and widgets, or changing the wallpaper.

Learning Home screen

Tapping [⌂] displays Home screen which consists of up to 12 screens you can use flicking left and right.

"ひつじのしつじくん®(Butler Sheep)"
©NTT DOCOMO

① Current home screen position
② Widget : Google Search
③ Widget : i-channel
④ Widget : Machi-chara
⑤ Shortcuts (applications)
⑥ Applications button
⑦ Wallpaper

❖Information

- You can switch the home application between "docomo" and "Xperia™" in the terminal. "docomo" is set to the home application by default. To switch the home application, from the Home screen, tap [⋮⋮] and [Settings]▶[Setup guide], and on the Preferred applications screen, [Change now]▶[Home screen], or from the Home screen, tap [⋮⋮] and [Settings]▶[Xperia™]▶[Preferred apps settings]▶[Home screen]. To switch applications (Home, screen lock, phonebook (contacts), video or music player) to be used in the terminal all at once, from the Home screen, tap [Preferred apps settings]▶[OK], or from the Home screen, tap [⋮⋮], [Settings]▶[Xperia™]▶[Preferred apps settings]▶[Set all to].
- When the home application is switched, widgets or shortcuts on the screen may not be displayed correctly depending on home screen layout etc.
- When the instruction guide for the Home screen appears, tap [OK]/[Do not show this again] to display the Home screen.

Switching the Home screen

1 Flick the Home screen to left or right.

- The Home screen switches.

❖Information

- You can check the current position of the Home screen with [●●●●●] at the top of the screen.
- Alternatively, display a list of home screens and then tap a home screen to switch. For details on the home screen list, see "Displaying a list of home screens" (P.71).

Displaying a list of home screens

1 From the Home screen, pinch-in.
- A home screen list appears.

❖Information
- Touch an hold an area of the Home screen where no icons are displayed and tap [Home screens] to display list of home screens.
- When the instruction guide for the home screen list appears, tap [OK]/[Do not show this again].
- To return to the home screen, pinch-out, or tap [⌂] or [↩].

Adding to the Home screen

1 Touch and hold an area of the Home screen where no icons are displayed.
- "Select an action" menu appears to change the Home screen.

■ Select an action

Shortcut	Add shortcuts of applications or setting screens (P.71).
Widget	Add widgets (P.72).
Folder	Create a new folder (P.73).
Kisekae	Change the background of the Home screen or Application screen, or download from website to add (P.73).
Wallpaper	Change the wallpaper or download from website to add (P.73).
Group	Add group shortcut of Application screen (P.74).
Home screens	Show home screens (P.71).
Wallpaper loop settings	Set whether to loop wallpaper on the Home screen.

Adding a shortcut to the Home screen

1 On "Select an action" menu screen (P.71), tap [Shortcut].

2 Select a shortcut you want to add.
- The shortcut appears on the Home screen.

❖Information
- Alternatively, you can add from the Home screen, [⋮⋮] and touch and hold an icon you want to add, tap [Add].

Adding a widget to the Home screen

1 On "Select an action" menu screen (P.71), tap [Widget].

- A list of widgets appears.

Bookmarks	Display bookmarks of Browser.
Bookmarks	Display bookmarks of Chrome.
Calendar	Display the calendar.
Contact	Display contacts using Contacts application of Xperia™.
Contents Headline	Display recommended music, videos, e-books and apps information at the dmarket.
docomo location information	Activate docomo location information application.
docomo Wi-Fi Easy Connection	You can connect/disconnect to Wi-Fi with a one-touch operation in a Wi-Fi area.
Email	Display Email Inbox etc.
Facebook	Display friends' comments.
Gmail	Display Gmail Inbox etc.
Google Search	Display the Google search box.
Google+ posts	Display posted contents in Google+.
IC Tag/Barcode Reader	Enable or disable IC Tag read mode.
Infrared	Send your profile or receive a file via infrared.
ｉチャネルウィジェット (i-channel widget)	Display latest information such as news or weather.
Music Unlimited	Display Music Unlimited.
NFC Quick Launch	Enable/disable Reader/Writer, P2P function.
OfficeSuite Recent History	Display OfficeSuite recent history.
Personal area	Display personal area.
Phonebook	Display phonebook using phonebook application provided by DOCOMO.
Phonebook Select members	Display history of calls or message (SMS) of 3 contacts selected from the Phonebook fixed/at random.
Play Store	Display applications recommended by Google Play.
Schedule & Memo	Display memos or photo memos on the calendar.
Screen mirroring	Enable/disable Screen mirroring.
TrackID™	Display TrackID.
Traffic	Enter a widget name and destination to activate the widget showing travel time to the destination. Tap to check supplied traffic information.
YouTube	Display the list of frequently played videos and recommended.
カテゴリナビ (Category navigation)	Display topics or search information by selecting category such as foodie and transfer information.

スマホなるほどツアーズ (Tips of smartphone for docomo with series)	View "Tips of smartphone for docomo with series".
マチキャラ (Machi-chara)	Display missed calls etc. or use しゃべってコンシェル (Shabette concier).
診断ツール (Diagnosis tool)	Activate diagnosis tool.

2 Select an item.

❖Information

- If you install an application with widget from Google Play, the installed widget is added to the widget list.

Adding a folder to the Home screen

1 On "Select an action" menu screen (P.71), tap [Folder].

- A folder is added on the Home screen.

■ Renaming

Tap a folder you want to rename▶Tap the name entry field and enter a folder name, then tap [完了 (Done)]▶Tap on the screen.

■ Adding an item

From the Home screen, touch and hold a shortcut you want to add▶Drag it onto any folder.

- A shortcut is moved into a folder.

❖Information

- Alternatively, touch and hold a folder and tap [Edit name], then enter a folder name and then tap [OK].

Changing Kisekae

1 On "Select an action" menu screen (P.71), tap [Kisekae].

2 Flick left or right and tap a Kisekae you want to change to.

❖Information

- Alternatively, select Kisekae you want to change to and tap [Set] to change Kisekae.
- Alternatively, from the Home screen, tap and then tap [Kisekae] to change.
- You can add Kisekae contents by tapping [Search] to download from website. To delete added Kisekae contents, select the image and tap [Delete]▶[Delete].

Changing wallpaper

1 On "Select an action" menu screen (P.71), tap [Wallpaper].

2 Tap [Album]/[Live Wallpapers]/[Xperia™ wallpapers].

- When you tap [Xperia™ wallpapers], select an image to set to the wallpaper, tap [Set wallpaper].
- When you tap [Album], select an image to set to the wallpaper, drag and set trimming frame for range in the image you want to use as wallpaper, and then tap [Crop] to set wallpaper.
- When you tap [Live Wallpapers], select a content, tap [Set wallpaper]. You can also download and add Live wallpaper content from a web page. For some contents, you can change type or contents displayed on the wallpaper by tapping [Settings].

Adding a group to the Home screen

1 On "Select an action" menu screen (P.71), tap [Group].

2 Select a group of applications you want to add.

❖Information

- Alternatively, on the Application screen (P.76), touch and hold a group name and then tap [Add].

Changing the Home screen

You can add, delete, sort home screens while the home screen list is displayed.

- For details on the home screen list, see "Displaying a list of home screens" (P.71).

Adding a home screen

1 From the Home screen, pinch-in.

- A home screen list appears.

2 Tap .

❖Information

- There are 5 home screens by default. You can add 7 home screens moreover.

Deleting a home screen

1 From the Home screen, pinch-in.

- A home screen list appears.

2 Tap of thumbnail you want to delete on the Home screen.

❖Information

- Alternatively, on the home screen list, touch and hold a thumbnail of home screen you want to delete and tap [Delete].

Sorting home screens

1 From the Home screen, pinch-in.
- A home screen list appears.

2 Touch and hold a home screen you want to sort.

3 Drag it to the place you want to move.

Moving an icon on the Home screen

1 From the Home screen, touch an icon you want to move.

2 Drag it anywhere.
- To move to another Home screen, keep touching the icon and drag it to left or right.

Deleting an icon from the Home screen

1 From the Home screen, touch and hold an icon you want to delete.

2 Tap [Delete].

❖Information
- Alternatively, touch and hold an icon you want to delete from the Home screen and drag it to displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Uninstalling a shortcut or widget on the Home screen

- Before uninstalling shortcut or widget on the Home screen, back up contents related to the application or widget that you want to save including data saved in the application or widget.
- Some applications or widgets may not be uninstalled.

1 From the Home screen, touch and hold a shortcut or widget you want to uninstall.

2 Tap [Uninstall].
- Uninstall screen appears.

3 Tap [OK]▶[OK].

❖Information
- You can also uninstall them from the Settings menu. For details, see "Deleting installed application" (P.137).

Application screen

You can access the applications installed in the terminal from the Application screen and use each function.

Learning Application screen

1 From the Home screen, tap (Applications button).

- The Application screen appears.

① Application tab
- View Application screen.

② Recommends tab
- Install applications recommended by DOCOMO.

③ Optional menu icon
- View optional menu such as Settings.

④ Group name
- To display/hide applications in the group, tap the group name.

⑤ Application icon
- is displayed for newly arrived application.
- Some application icons are displayed with a number of missed calls or unread mails.

⑥ Number of applications in the group

⑦ Applications in the group
- To display/hide all applications in the group, pinch-out/in the Application screen.

❖Information

- When the instruction guide for the Application screen appears, tap [OK]/[Do not show this again].
- To close the Application screen, tap or .
- If you download applications from website, icons with are added to the Application screen.
- Touch and hold an application icon, then tap [About] to check the application information.
- If you selected Japanese as a language in Initial settings (P.40), some group names are displayed in Japanese even after the language setting is changed. These group names can be changed to English (P.83).

Applications

The applications displayed on the Application screen by default are as follows.

- For usage of some applications, separate subscription (Charged) is required.

DOCOMO Services

dmenu

A shortcut application for "dmenu" to find contents that you used in i-mode and joyful and convenient contents for smartphones readily.→P.167

dmarket

Activate dmarket. You can buy contents such as music, videos, books at the dmarket. Applications on Google Play are also featured.→P.167

iチャネル (i-channel)

An application for using i-channel.

i コンシェル (i-concier)

An application for using i-concier. i-concier is a service in which a mobile phone supports your life like a "butler" or "concierge".

しゃべってコンシェル (Shabette concier)

Speak "what you want to search" or "what you want to do" to the terminal. It understands your intention and display the best solution on the display from the services or functions of the terminal (in Japanese only).

ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)

An application for using "ケータイデータお預かりサービス (Data Security Service)", "電話帳バックアップ (Phonebook backup)" or "SDカードバックアップ (SD card backup)". Back up or restore phonebook data etc. For information on docomo backup (save to microSD card), see "ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)" (P.227).

docomo Wi-Fi Easy Connection

An application for simply using "docomo Wi-Fi" public wireless LAN service by DOCOMO or home Wi-Fi. Using the widget, you can connect/disconnect to Wi-Fi with a one-touch operation in a Wi-Fi area.

Basic Functions/Settings

Phone

Activate DOCOMO phone application to make/receive calls, and switch between calls.→P.85

docomo phonebook

Activate DOCOMO phonebook application to manage phonebooks of your friends or colleagues.→P.92

spモードメール (sp-mode mail)

Send/receive mails using DOCOMO mail address (@docomo.ne.jp). You can use pictogram and Deco-mail. Mails can be received automatically.→P.102

Disaster kit
An application which helps you to check received Early Warning "Area Mail", make settings, and record and check messages on the docomo Disaster Message Board.

Instruction Manual
Display the terminal instruction manual. You can start a function you want to use from the explanation (in Japanese only).

* See "About manuals of SO-01E" in "Introduction".

Settings
Make the terminal settings.→P.118

遠隔サポート (Remote support)
An application for using "スマートフォンあんしん遠隔サポート (Smartphone Anshin Remote Support)". With "スマートフォンあんしん遠隔サポート (Smartphone Anshin Remote Support)", call center staff can provide operational support while checking your terminal screen remotely.

Entertainment/Tools

Camera
Take photos and record video clips.→P.185

フォトコレクション (Photo collection)
Free storage service of photos/videos. They can be automatically categorized by recognized faces or scenes on the cloud.

1Seg
Watch 1Seg program.→P.175

Media Player
Play music and videos.→P.210

Memo
Create/Manage memos. It supports i-concier service.

Schedule
Create/Manage schedule. It supports i-concier service.

Infrared
An application which allows you to send and receive phonebook data, etc. via infrared communication.→P.158

IC Tag/Barcode Reader
Read IC Tag and barcode.

Calculator
Perform basic calculations such as addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division.

Alarm & clock
Set alarm and view clock.→P.223

Osaifu-Keitai
Use Osaifu-Keitai.→P.169

iDアプリ (iD application)
Make settings etc. for use of electronic money, iD.→P.174

Calendar
Display a calendar and manage schedule.→P.221

ToruCa
Acquire, display, search, or refresh ToruCa.→P.174

Xperia

FM radio
Use FM radio.→P.183

Music Unlimited
Connect to "Music Unlimited" which allows you to listen to music around the world anytime and anywhere.

PlayMemories Online
Upload simply photos or videos onto the photo/video cloud service by Sony, and share uploaded photos or videos with specified friends.

PSMを始めよう (Let's start PSM)
Show dedicated website for the "PS Store". Download games to play on the terminal.

Timescape™
View Social Networking Service (SNS) history.→P.213

TrackID™
Use a service that checks the information of playing music.

Video Unlimited
Connect to "Video Unlimited" which allows you to download favorite videos and watch them anywhere.

WALKMAN
Playback music data stored on the internal storage or microSD card.

Xperia Start Up
Access Google Play to download applications to make use of Xperia™ even more useful and fun.

Album
View photos and videos you took, and images posted on Picasa or Facebook.→P.205

Dial
Activate Xperia™ phone application to make/receive calls, and switch between calls.

Notes
Create notes or voice notes, and send them to another terminal to share information. Also, synchronize with Evernote.

Movies
Play downloaded contents with Video Unlimited or videos that are transferred from a PC to the terminal. On the terminal, you can play videos of a DLNA device or programs that are recorded with a Blu-ray Disc recorder after transferring to the terminal by TV transfer.

電子書籍 Reader by Sony (eBook Reader by Sony)
You can buy topical books or popular comics from SONYs eBook store "Reader Store" whenever you like.

Contacts
Activate Xperia™ phonebook application to manage contacts of your friends or colleagues.

Facebook
Activate Facebook client application.→P.140

OfficeSuite
View and read Office documents.→P.229

File Commander
You can easily find still pictures, videos, music data, downloaded files, etc.

Google

Email
Send and receive emails (multiple accounts are also available).→P.105

Gmail
Send and receive mails from/to a Google account.→P.112

Messaging
Send and receive messages (SMS).→P.102

Talk
Chat with friends using Google Talk instant messaging.→P.112

Browser
Browse Web and WAP sites (except for WML) and download files.→P.114

Chrome
Connect to the Internet with Google Chrome.

Search
Search information in the terminal and web pages from keywords.→P.48

Play Store
Access to the Google Play, download and buy new applications.→P.168

YouTube
Playback videos around the world or upload recorded videos.→P.207

Play Movies & TV
An application for accessing movie rental service of Google Play. Select a movie you want to watch and rent it.

Maps
Use Google map services, such as viewing current location, finding another location and calculating routes.→P.218

Navigation
Display Google map navigation to receive detailed guides for your destination.→P.220

Local
Use various information registered on Google map, such as shops around the current location.→P.219

Latitude
Check and share the location information of specified friends.→P.220

Google+
Activate Social Network Service (SNS) client application "Google+" provided by Google.

Messenger
Chat with friends using Google+ instant messaging.

❖Information

- The applications displayed on this application screen are pre-installed by default. Some pre-installed applications can be uninstalled. Even if you uninstall, you can download in "Play Store" (P.168) again.
- From the Home screen, tap and tap "Recommends" tab ▶[おすすめアプリを見る (See recommended applications)] to display applications recommended by DOCOMO. For details, see "Installing "Recommends" applications" (P.84).
- Some application names may not be displayed fully.
- Some applications require downloading and installation. If you cannot download application by tapping, from the Home screen, tap and tap [Settings]▶[Security]▶[Unknown sources]▶[OK], mark the checkbox and then tap the application.
- Activating two or more applications may increase battery consumption and the operation time may become short. For this reason, it is recommended to end applications when not used. To end the application, on the application screen you are using, tap to display the Home screen (P.70).
- If you selected Japanese as a language in Initial settings (P.40), some group names are displayed in Japanese even after the language setting is changed. These group names can be changed to English (P.83).

Changing the Application screen

From the Application screen, you can add icons, sort icons, uninstall applications. Also you can change group setting.

Adding an application icon to the Home screen

1 From the Application screen, touch and hold an icon you want to add to the Home screen.

2 Tap [Add].

- The application icon is added onto the Home screen.

❖Information

- Touch and hold an area of the Home screen where no icons are displayed and tap [Shortcut] ▶[Application] and select an application to add an icon.

Sorting application icons

1 From the Application screen, touch and hold an application icon you want to sort.

2 Drag it anywhere.

- The application icon moves.

❖Information

- To move an application icon to another application group, touch and hold the icon on the Application screen, tap [Move], then select a desired group, or touch and hold the icon on the Application screen, then drag it to a group to move to.

Uninstalling an application

Some application icons can be deleted from the Application screen.

- Before uninstalling application, back up contents related to the application that you want to save including data saved in the application.
- Some applications or widgets may not be uninstalled.

1 From the Application screen, touch and hold an icon of application you want to uninstall.

2 Tap [Uninstall].

- Uninstall screen appears.

3 Tap [OK]►[OK].

❖Information

- You can also uninstall them from the Settings menu. For details, see "Deleting installed application" (P.137).

Adding a shortcut of group to the Home screen

1 From the Application screen, touch and hold an icon you want to add to the Home screen.

2 Tap [Add].

- Shortcuts to the group is added to the Home screen.

❖Information

- Touch and hold an area of the Home screen where no icons are displayed and tap [Group] and select a group to add a shortcut.

Changing the color of group name

1 From the Application screen, touch and hold a group you want to change the color.

2 Tap [Edit label] and select label color to change.

- The color for group name is changed.

Deleting group

1 From the Application screen, touch and hold a group you want to delete.

2 Tap [Delete]▶[OK].

- Application icons belonged to the deleted group move to the "Download Application" group.

❖Information

- "Recently", "DOCOMO Services", and "Download Application" groups cannot be deleted.

Changing group name

1 From the Application screen, touch and hold a group you want to rename.

2 Tap [Edit name].

3 Enter a group name in the entry box and tap [OK].

- The group is renamed.

❖Information

- "Recently", "DOCOMO Services", and "Download Application" groups cannot be renamed.

Adding group

1 From the Application screen, tap ⋮ and tap [Add group].

2 Enter a group name in the entry box and tap [OK].

- A new group is added.

Sorting groups

1 From the Application screen, touch and hold a group name you want to sort.

2 Drag it anywhere.

- The group is moved.

Small apps

Display recently used applications in thumbnail list and activate. Also, you can use a small app while using another application.

1 Tap ▭.

- It displays recently used applications in a thumbnail list and small apps that are set.

❖Information

- Tap an application displayed in a thumbnail to activate, touch and hold it to select "Delete from list"/ "App info". Flick left or right an application displayed in a thumbnail to delete from the list.
- By default, "Calculator", "Timer", "Notes" and "Recorder" are set in Small apps. You can tap ✚ to install small apps from Play Store and set.

Searching applications

Search application installed into the terminal to activate.

1 From the Application screen, tap ⋮ and then tap [Search].
- The software keyboard appears.

2 Enter application name to search.
- Search suggestions appear as you enter a character.

3 Tap a search item.
- The application activates.

❖Information
- When you use for the first time, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to use My location info for the Google search result or service. Read the terms of use and tap [OK].
- Alternatively, from the Home screen, tap ⊞, then tap [Search] to search application. For details, see "Searching information in the terminal and web pages" (P.48).

Switching application screens

Icons on the Application screen can be displayed in a list or tiles.

1 From the Application screen, tap ⋮ and then tap [List format]/[Tile format].

Installing "Recommends" applications

The "Recommends" tab in the Application screen shows applications recommended by DOCOMO (P.76).

1 From the Application screen, tap "Recommends" tab.

2 Tap [おすすめアプリを見る (See recommended applications)].

3 Tap an application.
- Download screen appears. Follow the onscreen instructions.

❖Information
- Downloaded applications are displayed in "Download Application" group in the Application screen.

Checking Home application information

1 From the Application screen, tap ⋮ and then tap [Application info].
- The home application information appears.

Making/Receiving a call

Making a call

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap "Dial" tab.

2 Enter the number of the recipient and tap .

- If a wrong number is entered, tap to delete the number.

3 To end call, tap [End call].

❖Information

- In Step 2, tap without entering a phone number to enter the phone number registered as the latest call in Recent calls (phone number for missed call is not included).
- To activate Xperia™ phone application, from the Home screen, tap , then tap [Dial].

Entering pause (,)

This function allows you to operate voice mail at home, to reserve tickets, or to check the balance of a bank account, etc.

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap "Dial" tab.

2 Enter the phone number, then tap and tap [Add 2–sec pause].

Emergency call

When the terminal is within range of the service area, you can make an emergency call of 110 (Police), 119 (Fire and ambulance), or 118 (Japan Coast Guard).

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap "Dial" tab.

2 Enter the number of the emergency call and tap .

- If a wrong number is entered, tap to delete the number.

❖Note

- If docomo mini UIM card is not inserted to the terminal, emergency calls (110, 119, 118) cannot be made in Japan.
- You can make an emergency call by tapping [Emergency call] on the screen unlocking screen. In Japan, however, on the PIN code entry screen, while PIN code locked or while PUK locked, emergency calls (110, 119, 118) cannot be made.
- This terminal supports "Emergency call location information". If you use the terminal to place a call to emergency numbers such as 110, 119, or 118, the information of a location where you are calling from (location information) is automatically notified to the Emergency call acceptance organization such as the Police Station.
  The Emergency call acceptance organization may not be able to figure out your exact location depending on the location where you place a call or radio wave condition.
  If you make a call hiding your caller ID, such as by entering a phone number with "184" for each call, the

location information and phone number are not notified. However, the Emergency call acceptance organization may decide to obtain the location information and phone number regardless of your settings when they consider it is necessary for lifesaving, etc. Note that the areas/time for which the "Emergency call location information" is ready to be used vary depending on the preparatory state of each Emergency call acceptance organization.

- When calling 110, 119 or 118 for emergency from the terminal, tell that you are calling from a mobile phone, and give your phone number and your current location precisely for checking callback from the police/fire department. Also, make a point to call in a stationary position to prevent the call from being dropped. Do not power off the terminal for at least 10 minutes after the emergency call just in case the Police or Fire/Ambulance may have to get in contact with you.
- Note that you may not connect to the local Fire Department or Police Station depending on where you are calling from. In this case, try to call from a public phone or an ordinary phone in the neighborhood.

Making an international call (WORLD CALL)

For details on WORLD CALL, refer to DOCOMO International Services website.

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap "Dial" tab.

2 Touch and hold [0] key until "+" sign appears.

- When making an international call, "+" is replaced by an international access code.

3 Enter Country code▶Area code (City code)▶The number of the recipient and tap .

- If the area code begins with "0", omit "0". However, "0" may be required to dial to some countries or areas such as Italy.

Receiving a call

1 While receiving a call, touch and hold (left) and drag it to (right).

2 To end call, tap [End call].

❖Information

- During the screen lock, the icon appears and you can answer a call by the same operation.

Muting the ringtone for an incoming call

1 When receiving a call, press / .

❖Information

- You can stop vibration by pressing / when silent mode (vibration) is set.
- From the Home screen, press to mute the ringtone for an incoming call.

Declining a call

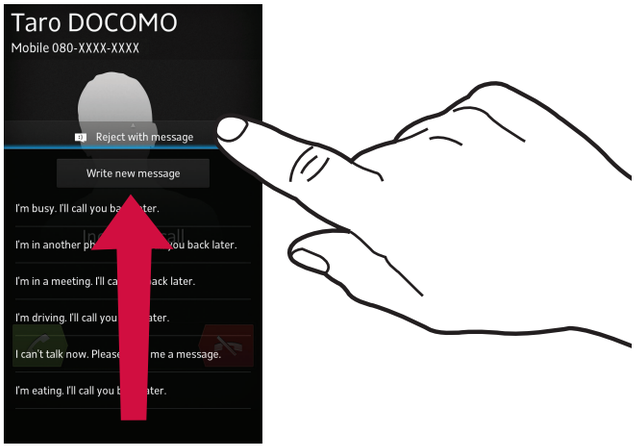
1 While receiving a call, touch and hold (right) and drag it to (left).

❖Information

- During the screen lock, the icon appears and you can reject a call by the same operation.
- If you reject an incoming call during use of Voice Mail Service, the call is connected to the Voice Mail service center.

Declining an incoming call and sending a message (SMS)

When you cannot answer a call, you can reject the call and send a message (SMS). Message to send is registered in advance, and you can edit it if necessary.



1 Drag Reject with message upwards when receiving a call.

2 Tap a message to send.

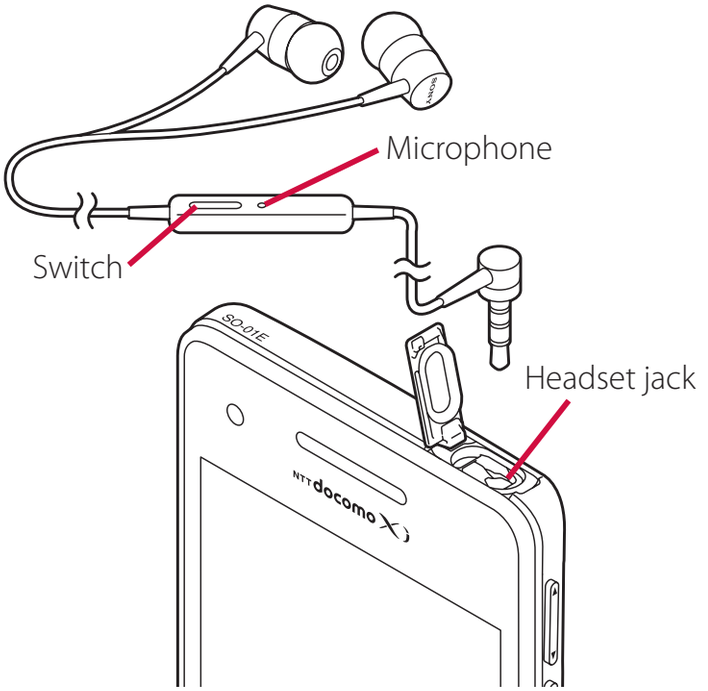
- The message (SMS) is sent to the caller.

❖Information

- While Voice Mail service is in use, a call is rejected and a message (SMS) is sent then the caller is connected to the Voice Mail service center.
- To create a new message to send, when receiving a call, drag Reject with message up and tap Write new message to create a message and send. To edit a message, from the Home screen, tap and , then tap [Call settings]▶[Reject call with message] to select and edit an existing message, then tap [OK].

Using Stereo Headset with Microphone

You can make or answer a call with Stereo Headset with Microphone (Sample) connecting to the terminal.



Making a call

1 Make a call with Stereo Headset with Microphone connected.

- An operation of making a call is the same as usual operation (P.85).

2 Press the switch to end the call.

Receiving a call

1 While receiving a call, press the switch of Stereo Headset with Microphone.

- The call is connected.
- When receiving a call, you can decline the call by pressing the switch for over a second.

2 To end a call, press the switch again.

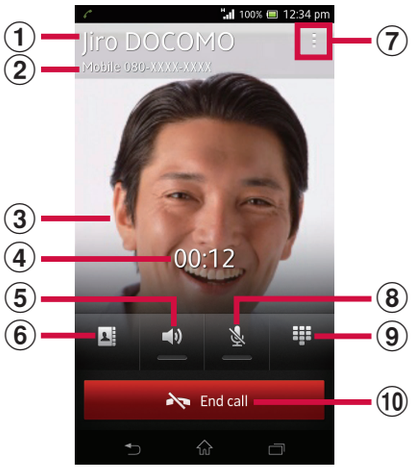
❖Information

- If you are using regular headphones without a microphone, you need to speak to the microphone of the terminal.
- While listening to music with Stereo Headset with Microphone connecting to the terminal, you can pause music and answer a call by pressing the switch. Music restarts automatically when ending the call depending on the player application.
- Connecting and removing Stereo Headset with Microphone repeatedly during a call may disconnect a call.

Operations during a call

Calling screen

On the Calling screen, you can set speakerphone or mute, or enter a phone number to make a call to another party.



① Name of the other party
② Number of the other party
③ A photo saved in Phonebook
④ Call duration time
⑤ Speaker : Set speakerphone on/off.
- Other party's voice can be heard from the speaker and handsfree call can be made.
- When the speakerphone is on, a speakerphone icon appears in the status bar.

⑥ Phonebook : View phonebook entry list screen (P.93).

⑦ Option menu : Set Hold during a call.
- To cancel Hold, tap [Retrieve call] during Hold.
- To set a call on hold, "Call waiting" subscription is required (P.91).

⑧ Mute : Set muting on/off of the microphone during a call.
- When the microphone is muted, a mute icon appears in the status bar.

⑨ Dial key : Enter the phone number you want to add to make a call.
- The ongoing call is automatically on hold.
- To add a call, "Call waiting" subscription is required (P.91).

⑩ Ending a call

❖Note
- Do not bring the terminal close to your ear with the speakerphone on to avoid from hearing damage.

Adjusting the ear speaker volume

1 During a call, press ◁ ▷ to adjust.

❖Information
- You can adjust the ear speaker volume only during a call.

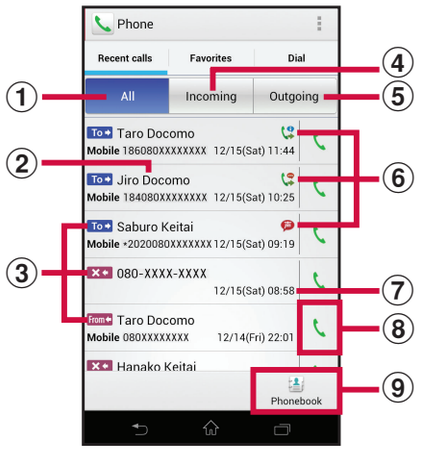
Call history

Showing call history

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap "Recent calls" tab.
- Recent calls screen appears.

Recent calls screen

Incoming call and outgoing call are displayed by chronological order in the Recent calls screen.



① All tab
② Phone number/name
③ History icons
- : Missed call
- : Incoming call
- : Outgoing call

④ Incoming tab
⑤ Outgoing tab
⑥ Call status icons
- : Caller ID notified
- : Caller ID hidden

- Notified if calls are made with "186" (Notify)/"184" (Hide) prefixed to the number.
- If you enter a phone number and tap ⋮, then select [Caller ID notification]▶[Notify]/[Not notify] to make a call, / does not appear in the Recent calls screen.

: Koe-no-Takuhaibin
- For details on Koe-no-Takuhaibin, refer to "Koe-no-Takuhaibin" (P.91) or NTT DOCOMO website.

: Incoming/outgoing international call

⑦ Date
⑧ Outgoing
⑨ Phonebook

❖Information
- On the Recent calls screen, tap ⋮ and tap [Call settings] to set/edit "Network service" or "Reject call with message" (P.91).

Making a call from Recent calls

1 On the Recent calls screen (P.89), tap .

Adding a number from the Recent calls to Phonebook

1 On the Recent calls screen (P.89), tap a phone number and tap [Add Phonebook].
- Alternatively, touch and hold a phone number, tap [Edit number before call]▶[Add Phonebook].

2 Tap desired phonebook entry, or tap [Register new].
- When you set a Google account etc., tap [Register new] so that you can select that account as a registration account.

3 On the profile editing screen, enter information and tap [Save].

Deleting a call history

1 On the Recent calls screen (P.89), tap ⋮.

2 Tap [Delete all]▶[OK].

❖Information
- To delete only an item from Recent calls, in the Recent calls screen, touch and hold a call log you want to delete and tap [Delete from call log]▶[OK].
- To delete all items from Incoming log or Outgoing log, in the Recent calls screen, tap "Incoming" tab/ "Outgoing" tab and tap ⋮, then [Delete all]▶[OK].

Displaying missed calls

When you have missed calls, appears in the status bar.

1 Drag the status bar downwards.

2 Tap [Missed call].
- Recent calls screen appears.

❖Information

- When you have missed calls, an icon appears indicating missed calls and the number of them in the screen unlock screen.

Call settings

You can set the network services or edit Reject call with message.

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap .

2 Tap [Call settings].

Network service	Koe-no-Takuhaibin	Koe-no-Takuhaibin is a service of taking voice messages for you.
	Voice mail service	It is a service of taking caller's message when you cannot answer an incoming call.
	Call forwarding service	It is a service of transferring call when you cannot answer an incoming call.
	Call Waiting	It is a service of putting the current call on hold and answering an incoming call or making a call to another party.
	Caller ID notification	Notify the display of the recipient phone of your phone number.
	Nuisance call blocking service	Register phone numbers of nuisance call to reject.
	Caller ID display request service	Request number notification for calls without phone number with guidance.

Network Service	Second call settings	Set action for additional incoming call during a call.
	Call notification	Notify incoming calls by SMS while the power is off or you are out of service area.
	English guidance	Switch the voice guidance to English or Japanese.
	Remote operation settings	Set to operate Voice Mail Service or Call forwarding Service using land-line phone, public phone or DOCOMO mobile phone, etc.
Roaming settings	P.236	
Advanced call settings	Sub address settings	Set whether "*" in phone number is identified as a sub address separator.
	Prefix settings	Register a prefix number added before phone number when making a call.
	Reject unregistered call	Set whether to reject an incoming call with unregistered phone number in the Phonebook automatically.
Reject call with message	Edit/Set a message (SMS) to be sent when rejecting an incoming call.	

Microphone noise suppression	Make the voice clear to understand for the other party during a call.
Accounts	Set Internet phone (SIP) account.
Use Internet calling	Set Internet phone (SIP) call method.

Phonebook

On the Phonebook, you can enter various information for contacts, for example, phone numbers, mail addresses and various service accounts.

Displaying phonebook

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [docomo phonebook].

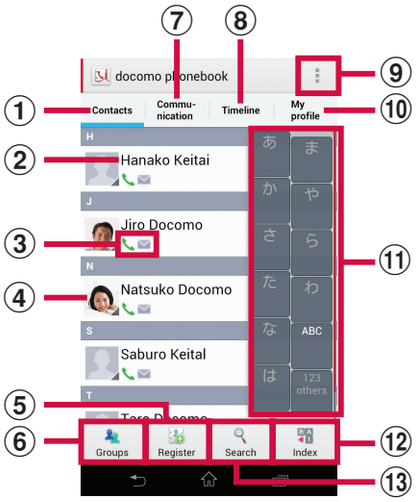
- The phonebook list screen appears.

❖Information

- When you use for the first time, "Use of Cloud" screen appears. Tap [Start] to start using Cloud. Cloud service in phonebook require DOCOMO's phonebook application.
- Alternatively, from the Home screen, tap and tap [Phonebook] to display phonebook list screen.
- Phonebook data can be backed up in a microSD card using "ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)". For information on backing up, see "ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)" (P.227).
- To activate Xperia™ phone application, from the Home screen, tap , then tap [Contacts].

Phonebook list screen

On the phonebook list screen, you can view details of your contacts. You can add a picture to a phonebook entry, and display phonebook entries by group.



① Contacts tab
② Name registered in the phonebook entry
③ Entry items
- Icons indicate entry items.

④ Photo set in the phonebook entry
⑤ Register
⑥ Group
- Select a group to be displayed.

⑦ Communication tab
- Call history or history of message (SMS), sp-mode mail and SNS messages are displayed. SNS messages are displayed only when using "My SNS" function after using Cloud is started.

⑧ Timeline tab
- Timeline of SNS/blog by "Friend NEWS" function and "My SNS" function is displayed. To display, start using Cloud.

⑨ Option menu
⑩ My profile tab
- Check your own phone number.

⑪ Index character area
- Tap index character to display phonebook entries allocated to the index character.

⑫ Index
- Display the index character to search entries in the order of Japanese syllabary, alphabet, etc.

⑬ Search

Managing phonebook

Adding a new phonebook entry

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap [Register].
- When you set a Google account etc., you can select that account as a registration account.

2 Enter a name on the profile editing screen.

3 Select a desired item to enter.
- You can set phone number, mail address, group, etc. Tap ^ in "Others", then tap [Add] to add information.

4 Tap [Save].

❖Information

- When you save "Phonetic name (family/given)", phonebook list is displayed according to Japanese syllabary order or alphabets order of "Phonetic name". If you enter "family/given" in Kanji without entering "Phonetic name" to add phonebook entry, the name appear in "ABC" field on the phonebook list screen.
- To check the number of registered data in the Phonebook, from the phonebook list screen, tap ⋮, then tap [Others]▶[About].
- If "docomo" account is selected as saving location when registering phonebook entries, SNS/Blog accounts can be set.

Using phonebook shortcuts

When you tap the photo (image) part on the phonebook list screen (P.93), shortcuts for phone, mail, etc. appear. Tap the shortcut to make a call, or create and send a mail.

	Call to registered phone number.
	Create and send message (SMS).
	Select Email application to create and send an email. • If "Use by default for this action." checkbox is marked, application selection screen will not appear for the next time.

* You can also use other functions such as displaying a map from the registered addresses.

❖Information

- When you tap a part other than photo (image) on the phonebook list screen, profile screen of the phonebook appears instead of shortcuts.
- Email shortcut appears when email address is saved in the selected phonebook entry and you have set your email account. If you have not set your email account, shortcut for Gmail ( ) appears.
- For a phonebook entry with only name, tapping photo (image) does not display the shortcut.

Making a call using the phonebook

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap a phonebook entry to call.

2 On the Profile screen, tap a phone number.

3 Tap [Call].

Searching for a phonebook entry

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap [Search].

2 Enter name or reading to search.

- All phonebook entries beginning with those letters (First name/Last name) appear.

Changing contacts display order

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap ⋮, then tap [Others]▶[Contacts display order].

2 Tap [Japanese order]/[Alphabetical order]/[Number order].

Changing accounts to display

You can set registered phonebook entries to be displayed in the phonebook list.

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap ⋮, then tap [Others]▶[Accounts to display].

2 Tap [Display all accounts]/[docomo].

- When you set a Google account etc., you can select that account to display.
- Tap [Customize...], select a checkbox for each account, and then customize display of the phonebook list screen.

Displaying phonebook entries by group

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap [Groups].

2 Tap a group.

- Phonebook entries are displayed by the group set when the entry is registered.
- To hide the group, tap [Close].

Setting group for phonebook entry

Set a group from phonebook list screen.

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap [Groups].

2 Touch and hold a phonebook entry to set a group, and then drag it to any group.

❖Information

- To cancel group setting, touch and hold a phonebook entry you want to cancel, and then drag it to the set group.
- When you set Google account etc., display groups by account. You can set/cancel group in the same account.

Creating a new group in Phonebook

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap [Groups]▶[Add].

- When "Add" is not displayed, flick on groups to display.
- When you set a Google account etc., you can select that account for adding.

2 On the group addition screen, enter color, icon, group name, and tap [OK].

- The items vary depending on the account type.

❖Information

- You can edit/delete newly created groups and "Family"/"Friends"/"Company", which are saved by default. To edit a group, touch and hold a group and tap [Edit group], then enter editing content and tap [OK]. To delete a group, touch and hold a group and tap [Delete group]▶[OK]. Phonebook entries belonged to the deleted group move to the "No group" tab.
- You cannot add a group that has the same name as existing groups.

Editing a phonebook entry

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap a phonebook entry to edit.

2 On the profile screen, tap [Edit].

3 Select a required item and edit.

- Tap [Add] to set phone number or mail address, and tap ^ on "Others" and [Add] to add information.

4 Tap [Save].

Registering a phonebook entry to Favorites

You can mark a phonebook entry as a favorite. The favorite list provides quick access to the phonebook entry you have marked.

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap a phonebook entry to combine.

2 On the profile screen, tap ☆.

- The icon turns to ★ (yellow) and the entry is registered to Favorites.

❖Information

- Phonebook entries saved to the docomo account/ Google account can be added to Favorites.
- To display phonebook entries added to Favorites, on the phonebook list screen, tap [Groups]▶[Favorites], or from the Home screen, tap and then tap "Favorites" tab.

Setting photo in a phonebook entry

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap a phonebook entry you want to add a picture.

2 On the profile screen, tap [Edit].

3 Tap [Setting] for image.

4 Tap [Take photo]/[Select picture].

- When you tap [Take photo], select "Camera"/"Picture effect" to take a photo. For information on how to shoot by "Picture effect", see "Picture effect" (P.201).
- When you tap [Select picture], select "Album"/"File commander" to select a picture.

5 Set image range to be displayed, and then tap [Crop].

- Drag or pinch to adjust cropping area to set image range.

6 Tap [Save].

❖Information

- You can also set photo to a phonebook entry by the following operation.
  From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Album]. Select an image you want to set and tap the screen and , then tap [Use as]▶[Photo of phonebook]. Select a phonebook entry you want to register, set image range to be displayed, and then tap [Crop].

Setting ringtone

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap a phonebook entry to set ringtone.

2 On the profile screen, tap and [Set ringtone].

3 Select a ringtone and tap [Done].

❖Information

- To set a ringtone other than the ones stored by default, tap .
- Depending on the saving account, ringtone can be set when saving a phonebook entry.

Combining phonebook entries

You can bind multiple phonebook entries together into one.

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap a phonebook entry to combine.

2 On the profile screen, tap and [Join/Separate].

- Phonebook entries to be combined are displayed.

3 Tap the phonebook entry to combine.

❖Information

- To cancel binding, on the profile screen of the phonebook, tap ⋮, then tap [Join/Separate]▶[Separate].

Deleting a phonebook entry

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap ⋮, then tap [Delete].

2 Mark the phonebook entry you want to delete.

- If you want to delete all phonebook entries, tap "Select all".
- Tap [Index] to search phonebook.

3 Tap [Delete]▶[OK].

❖Information

- To delete only an item of phonebook entry, in the phonebook list screen, tap a phonebook entry you want to delete and tap ⋮, then tap [Delete]▶[OK].

Checking My profile and editing information

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap "My profile" tab.

2 Tap [Edit].

3 On the My profile screen, enter necessary information.

- Tap [Add] to set phone number or mail address, and tap [Set] to add SNS or Blog account. Tap ^ in "Others", then tap [Add] to add information.

4 Tap [Save].

❖Information

- You can register multiple phone numbers, mail addresses, SNS/Blog accounts, etc. in My profile.
- Name card data created with name card creator application can be saved to My profile and the name card data can be exchanged via network. When you use for the first time, in the phonebook list screen, tap the "My profile" tab and [Create new] and follow the onscreen instructions.

Sending phonebook entries via infrared communication

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap ⋮, then tap [Others]▶[Send via infrared].

- To send an entry, tap [Send one], select entry to send then tap [OK]▶[OK].
- To send all phonebook entries, tap [Send all] ▶ Tap [Start], enter docomo apps password, tap [OK], then enter the same authentication password as that of the recipient and tap [OK] ▶ [OK] ▶ [OK].

❖Information

- When sending all phonebook entries via infrared communication, you need to enter authentication password an docomo apps password. Authentication password is a 4-digit number fixed up between you and other party in advance. For the docomo apps password, see "docomo apps password" (P.139).
- To activate infrared communication in a selected phonebook entry, tap ⋮ in the profile screen, [Infrared]▶[OK]▶[OK]. To send My profile, tap "My profile" tab in the phonebook entry list screen, tap ⋮, [Send via infrared]▶[OK]▶[OK]. If a name card is stored in My profile, tapping [Send via infrared] opens a screen to select "send my profile" or "Exchange name card (via infrared)".
- Phonebook entries can be sent using "Infrared" app. For details, refer to "Sending data via infrared communication" (P.159).

Sending phonebook via Bluetooth/ Email/Gmail

Registered phonebook and My profile information can be sent using Bluetooth function (P.161), or email attachment function.

■ Sending phonebook

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap a phonebook entry you want to send.

2 On the profile screen, tap ⋮ and [Share].

3 Select sending method and follow the onscreen instructions.

■ Sending My profile

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap "My profile" tab.

2 Tap ⋮ and [Share].

3 Select sending method and follow the onscreen instructions.

❖Information

- To use Bluetooth function, turn on Bluetooth function (P.161) in advance, or select [Bluetooth]▶[Turn on] in Step 3.
- To use email, you need to make settings of your email account (P.105).
- If you want to send it as a data attached to email/ Gmail, send from the compose screen for the mail service in which you have set an account. When you have not set a Gmail account, setup wizard appears. You can create and send email after settings are done.
- Messaging (SMS) is not available.
- You cannot send some information such as name card data set in phonebook.
- For sending all phonebook entries, see "Sharing phonebook entry currently displayed" (P.100).

Sharing phonebook entry currently displayed

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap ⋮, then tap [Others]▶[Import/Export].

2 Tap [Share phonebook data].

3 Select sending method and follow the onscreen instructions.

- If "Use by default for this action." checkbox is marked, application selection screen will not appear for the next time.

❖Information

- If display conditions for phonebook (P.95) are set, only phonebook entries to be displayed are exported.
- To use Bluetooth function, turn on Bluetooth function (P.161) in advance, or select [Bluetooth]▶[Turn on] in Step 3.
- To use email, you need to make settings of your email account (P.105).
- If you want to send it as a data attached to email/Gmail, send from the compose screen for the mail service in which you have set an account. When you have not set a Gmail account, setup wizard appears. You can create and send email after settings are done.
- Messaging (SMS) is not available.
- You cannot send some information such as name card data set in phonebook.

Exporting/Importing phonebook entries

You can export/import phonebook entries from/to microSD card or docomo mini UIM card. This is useful, for example, when you want to transfer the contact information to another phone.

❖Information

- You can also use a synchronization service for synchronizing your phonebook. For details, refer to "Setting Auto-sync" (P.142).

Exporting phonebook to microSD card

Insert a microSD card in advance (P.33).

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap ⋮, then tap [Others]▶[Import/Export].

2 Tap [Export to SD card].

3 Tap [Export one contact data]/[Export some contact data]/[Export all contact data]▶[OK].

- When you tap [Export one contact data]/[Export some contact data], mark a contact to export and tap [OK].

4 Select [No]/[Yes] for attaching name card.

5 Tap [OK].

Importing phonebook from microSD card

Insert a microSD card in advance (P.33).

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap ⋮, then tap [Others]▶[Import/Export].

2 Tap [Import from SD card].

- When you set a Google account etc., you can select that account as an import account.
- If there is only one file, the file is imported immediately.

3 Tap [Import one phonebook data]/[Import multiple phonebook data]/[Import all phonebook data]▶[OK].

- If you tap [Import one phonebook data]/[Import multiple phonebook data], mark vCard files to import, then tap [OK].
- If a file has multiple phonebook entries, they are imported all at once.

❖Information

- For some phonebook entries, a part of data may not be imported or exported.

Importing phonebook entries from docomo mini UIM card

1 On the phonebook list screen (P.93), tap ⋮, then tap [Others]▶[Import/Export].

2 Tap [Import from SIM card].

- When you set a Google account etc., you can select that account as an import account.

3 Tap a phonebook entry to import.

- Alternatively, touch and hold a contact to be imported, tap [Import].
- To import all phonebook entries, tap ⋮ and [Import all phonebook data].

❖Information

- Names and phone numbers can be imported.
- If there is a phonebook entry whose name is matched with the imported entry, the entry is imported as a separated one.
- To export phonebook entries to docomo mini UIM card, use "Contacts" application of Xperia™. Note that only name and the first phone number can be saved because of memory space of docomo mini UIM card. For some phonebook entries, a part of data may not be exported.

sp-mode mail

Send/receive mails using DOCOMO mail address (@docomo.ne.jp).
You can use pictogram and Deco-mail. Mails can be received automatically. For details on sp-mode mail, refer to "ご利用ガイドブック (spモード編) (Mobile Phone User's Guide [sp-mode]) (in Japanese only)".

1 From the Home screen, tap .

2 Flick the screen upwards, then tap [ダウンロード (Download)].

- After this step, follow the instructions on the screen.

❖Information

- sp-mode mail data can be backed up in a microSD card using "ドコモバックアップ (DOCOMO backup)". For information on backing up, see "ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)" (P.227).

Message (SMS)

You can send and receive text messages up to 70 two-byte characters (up to 160 one-byte characters) with a mobile phone number as the destination.

Sending message (SMS)

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Messaging].

2 Tap (New mail).

3 Enter the recipient's phone number.

- Tap to display the contacts list screen to select from registered contacts. When you enter a name or phone number in the box at the top of the screen, a list of contacts matching the entered numbers or letters appears.

4 Tap [Write message] and enter a message.

- Tap and [Select message template] to enter by selecting message template registered in "Message template settings" (P.104).

- When the number of entered characters comes close to a limit, a number of enterable characters appears on the upper left of the text box.

5 Tap [Send].

❖Information

- For the character entry, see "Character entry" (P.49).
- You can also send/receive text messages to/from customers of overseas network operators. For details, see "Mobile Phone Users Guide [International Services]" or the DOCOMO International Services website.
- To send SMS to users of overseas network operators, enter "+", "Country code" and then "the recipient mobile phone number". Enter the phone number without a leading "0", if any. You can also enter "010", "Country code" and "the recipient mobile phone number" to send messages (To reply to the received SMS overseas, enter "010").

Receiving and reading message (SMS)

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Messaging].

2 Tap a sender whose messages (SMS) you want to read.

- A message (SMS) appears.

❖Information

- When you receive a message (SMS), appears on the status bar. To read the message (SMS), drag the status bar downward, tap an item of notified message (SMS).
- Tap / in the message (SMS) to turn to (yellow). From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Messaging], tap and [Starred messages] to quickly access to the mail you have marked.

Saving phone number of message (SMS) to Contacts

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Messaging].

2 Select a phone number to save.

3 Tap and then [Add to Contacts].

4 Tap desired phonebook entry, or tap [Register new].

- When you set Google account etc., tap [Register new] to select the account as a saving location.

5 Enter required items and tap [Save].

Setting message (SMS)

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Messaging].

2 Tap and then [Settings].

Delivery report	Set whether to mark a message (SMS) you sent each time a recipient receives the message (SMS).
Notifications	Set whether to show message (SMS) arrival notification in the status bar.
Notification tone	Set ringtone when receiving a message (SMS).
Notification vibration*	Set whether to vibrate when receiving a message (SMS).
Notification light	Set whether to notify message (SMS) reception by notification LED.
SIM messages	Manage messages (SMS) saved to docomo mini UIM card.
Message template settings	Register phrase that can be inserted when writing a text.
Push settings	Set a message (SMS) sent from the provider.
SMS center number	Check SMS center number.

* You need to set to Silent mode (vibration) or mark "Vibrate on ring" (P.131) checkbox beforehand.

Deleting a message (SMS)

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Messaging].

2 Tap a party whose messages (SMS) you want to delete.

3 Touch and hold a message (SMS) you want to delete.

4 Tap [Delete message]▶[Delete].

❖Information

- To delete several messages (SMS) of the party, in Step 3, tap , tap [Delete messages], and mark messages (SMS) you want to delete, then tap and tap [Delete]. To delete all messages (SMS) of the party, tap at the top of the screen, tap [Mark all], then tap and tap [Delete].

Deleting messages (SMS) by party

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Messaging].

2 Touch and hold a party you want to delete.

- The party to be deleted is marked. Tap at the top of the screen and tap [Mark all] to select all parties.

3 Tap and [Delete].

❖Information

- In Step 2, tap ⋮ and tap [Delete conversations] to select a party to delete or delete all messages (SMS).

Email

You can create an email account provided by mopera U mail, a POP3 or IMAP compatible email account provided by general ISP (provider), or an Exchange ActiveSync account to send or receive email.

Making initial setting for Email

Email setup wizard appears. Set according the onscreen instructions. Multiple email accounts can be set.
For mopera U mail setting procedure, see "Using mopera U Mail" (P.111).

1 From the Home screen, tap ⊞, then tap [Email].

2 Enter your email address and password.

3 Tap [Next].

- To make the email account settings manually, tap [Manual setup] and follow the onscreen instructions.

4 Set Inbox check frequency, mark required items and tap [Next].

- If a screen for selecting type of account appears, tap an email account type and follow the onscreen instructions to set.

5 Enter account name and name displayed on emails you send, and tap [Next].

- Inbox for set email account appears.
- If you set an Exchange ActiveSync account, a name displayed for email cannot be set. Set up from "Your name" (P.109) on email account settings after email initial settings is complete.

❖Information

- If you need to make the settings manually, contact your email service provider or system administrator for the correct email account settings.
- If you set an Exchange ActiveSync account as email account, and if server manager sets Remote wipe, the data saved in the terminal may be deleted. Data stored in microSD card is not deleted.
- Emails are not displayed in Timescape.

Creating and sending email

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Email].

2 Tap (Compose).

3 Enter the email address of recipient.

- Tap to display the contacts list screen to select from registered contacts. When you enter a name or email address in the search box at the top of the screen, a list of contacts matching the entered numbers or letters appears.
- To add Cc or Bcc recipients, tap and tap [Show Cc/Bcc].
- To enter multiple email addresses directly, separate with a comma (,) and then enter the next email address.

4 Enter a subject and message.

5 Tap (Send).

❖Information

- To attach a file, while creating an email, tap and attach a file in the following step.

Add picture	Select a file from the saved image file list to attach it.
Take photo	Start the camera to take a photo and attach it.
Add video	Select a file from the saved video file list to attach it.
Record video	Start the camera to shoot a video and attach it.
Add sound	WALKMAN : Select a file from the saved music file list to attach it. Sound Recorder : Record a voice message and attach it.

- Image/video/music file up to 5MB can be attached in Email.
- When you want to save a mail as draft while creating a mail, enter any of recipient, subject or message or attach a file. If you do not enter or attach anything, a mail is not saved as draft (when only automatic signature is attached, a mail is not saved as draft either).
- While creating a mail, tap and tap [Save draft] to save a mail as draft. Also, if you view another screen while creating an email, the email is automatically saved as draft.
- In sent/received emails, a communication data is also included other than text and image displayed on the screen and charges will apply to the data.
- Email is handled as an email from a PC. You cannot send or receive email if "Reject emails from PCs" is set on a recipient terminal.

Receiving and reading email

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Email].

- If you have already set an email account, tap [Inbox] to select an email account to receive.

2 On the Inbox, tap and tap [Refresh].

3 Tap an email you want to read.

- Email message appears.

❖Information

- The sender name of a received email is the name set on sender's terminal.
- If you set "Email notifications" in Account settings (P.109) and set "Inbox check frequency" to an item other than "Manual", appears in the status bar when you receive a new email. Drag the status bar downwards to read the received email.
- If you set "Inbox check frequency" in Account settings (P.109) to an item other than "Manual", and if you are using the pay-as-you-go data communication, you may be charged every time you check your email.
- If you tap the address of a received email, you can register it in Phonebook. If it has been already registered, you can display the details of the entry.
- Tap on the email list screen or email message screen to turn (yellow) and add the marked email to "Starred" folder. "Starred" folder is displayed when you tap [Inbox] ▶ [Show all folders]. From "Starred" folder, you can quickly access to the mail you have marked.
  If is not displayed on the email message screen, tap to display.
- When phone memory becomes low, a message indicating low memory space appears and receiving emails is not available. Delete saved emails etc. to make available memory space.

Changing Inbox view

Turn Preview pane on and turn the terminal sideways to show preview of email message. To switch to the landscape view, turn Auto-rotate screen on beforehand (P.46).

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Email].

2 Tap and [Settings]▶[General]▶[Preview pane].

3 Tap [Landscape].

❖Information

- If you have two or more accounts, change made in any of the accounts applies to all accounts.

Saving attachment file of email

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Email].

2 Tap email with attached files and tap .

- The attached file list is displayed.

3 Tap [Save] of file you want to save.

- When attached file is not loaded, tap [Load].
- Tap [View] to view the attached file.

❖Information

- The attached file is saved on the internal storage.

Replying/forwarding email

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Email].

2 Tap email to reply or forward and tap .

3 Tap any of [Reply]/[Reply all]/[Forward].

- When you tap [Forward], enter an email address to forward.

4 Enter a message.

5 Tap (Send).

❖Information

- Alternatively, in Inbox, touch and hold an email you want to reply or forward and tap [Reply]/[Reply all]/[Forward] to replay or forward.
- When you reply or forward an email, the original message contents for replying or forwarding is quoted. To delete the quoted message text, unmark "Include original text".
- When you forward an email, the attachment file of the original message is quoted. To cancel quoting attached file, tap .

Deleting email

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Email].

2 Tap an email delete.

3 Tap and [Delete].

❖Information

- Touch and hold an email you want to delete and tap [Delete]▶[Delete] to delete.
- To delete several emails, in Inbox, tap and [Delete], mark emails you want to delete, and tap [Delete]▶[Delete]. To delete all emails, tap [Mark all]▶[Delete]▶[Delete].

Changing Email account settings

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Email].

2 Tap and [Settings].

3 Tap an Email account you want to change the settings for.

Account name	Change account name.
Your name	Change your name (sender name).
Signature	Change your signature.
Quick reply	Register phrase that can be inserted when creating an email.
Default account	Set to the default account to send email, if you set two or more email accounts.
Inbox check frequency	Set whether to check new messages automatically and intervals of automatic check.
Auto download attachments*1	Set whether to download attached file automatically when connecting via Wi-Fi.
Email notifications	Set whether to show email arrival notification in the status bar.
Select ringtone	Set ringtone when receiving an email.
Vibrate*2	Set whether to vibrate when receiving an email.
Notification light	Set whether to notify email reception by notification LED.
Incoming settings	Set mail server for receiving.
Outgoing settings	Set mail server for sending.
Delete account	Delete Email account.

*1 Appears when Gmail account (@gmail.com) is set.
*2 You need to set to Silent mode (vibrate) or mark "Vibrate on ring" (P.131) checkbox beforehand.

❖Information

- The items vary depending on the account type.
- You can also set "Out of office", "Days to sync", "Sync contacts", and "Sync calendar" for an Exchange ActiveSync account. "Outgoing settings" cannot be set.
- If you set "Inbox check frequency" to an item other than "Manual", and if you are using the pay-as-you-go data communication, you may be charged every time you check email.
- If you tap [General] in Step 3, you can change whole "Email" application settings.

Setting another Email account

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Email].

2 Tap and [Settings]▶[ADD ACCOUNT].

3 Enter your email address and password.

- If required, mark [Send email from this account by default.].

4 Tap [Next].

- To make the email account settings manually, tap [Manual setup] and follow the onscreen instructions.

5 Set Inbox check frequency, mark required items and tap [Next].

- If a screen for selecting type of account appears, tap an email account type and follow the onscreen instructions to set.

6 Enter account name and name displayed on emails you send, and tap [Next].

- Inbox for set email account appears.
- If you set an Exchange ActiveSync account, a name displayed for email cannot be set. Set up from "Your name" (P.109) on email account settings after email initial settings is complete.

❖Information

- If you need to make the settings manually, contact your email service provider or system administrator for the correct email account settings.
- If you set an Exchange ActiveSync account as email account, and if server manager sets Remote wipe, the data saved in the terminal may be deleted. Data stored in microSD card is not deleted.
- Tap [Inbox] to display a list of set accounts. Tap [Combined view] to display combined Inbox for all accounts.
- Emails are not displayed in Timescape.

Deleting Email account

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Email].

2 Tap and [Settings].

3 Tap an account to delete.

4 Tap [Delete account]▶[OK].

Using mopera U Mail

mopera U users can use mopera U Mail.
For mopera U setting procedure, see "Setting mopera U" (P.129).
In mopera U Mail, POP mail and IMAP mail are available. The mail box supports 50MB. Also, the Web mail system is available.

■ POP mail

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Email].
- If you already set an Email account, tap ⋮ and [Settings]▶[ADD ACCOUNT].

2 Enter mopera U mail address and mopera U password, then tap [Manual setup]/[Next].
- If you tap [Next], it changes automatically to POP3 account. Go to Step 4.

3 Tap [POP3] from the type of the mail account.

4 Check that you have entered "User name" and "Password" for mopera U correctly, and "mail.mopera.net" for the POP3 server.
- If you tap [Next] in Step 2, "mail.mopera.net" is entered in the POP3 server field.

5 Select the security type.
- When you do not set security, select "None".

6 Confirm the entry, then tap [Next].

7 Enter "mail.mopera.net" for the SMTP server and confirm the entry of "User name" and "Password" for mopera U.
- If you tap [Next] in Step 2, you need to mark "Require sign–in" to check entered "User name", "Password" for mopera U.
- If you tap [Next] in Step 2, "mail.mopera.net" is entered in the SMTP server field. Set "587" in the Port field.

8 Tap [Next].

9 On the account setting screen, set Inbox check frequency, etc. and tap [Next].

10 On the account setting screen, enter a display name for sending mail and tap [Next].
- The mailer is displayed and the set mail account is available.

❖Information

- When "Require sign-in." is unmarked on the SMTP server setting screen, sending mails is not available. Mark "Require sign-in.".

Gmail

If you have a Google account, you can send/receive emails by using Gmail on your terminal. If you have no Google account, see "Setting Google account" (P.139).

❖Information

- Gmail messages are not displayed in Timescape.

Refreshing Gmail

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Gmail].

2 On the Inbox tray, tap .

- Synchronizing "Gmail" application in the terminal with your Gmail account starts, and the Inbox is refreshed.

Google Talk

You can use Google Talk instant messaging to chat with friends. To use Google Talk, you need to make settings of your Google account. For details, refer to "Setting Google account" (P.139).

Signing in Google Talk

Signing in is unnecessary if you have already set a Google account.

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Talk].

2 Tap [Existing] and enter user name and password.

3 Tap [Sign in].

- After this step, follow the onscreen instructions.

❖Information

- For details on Google Talk, from the Google Talk screen, tap and then tap [Help] to refer to.

Early Warning "Area Mail"

It is a service with which you can receive earthquake early warning, etc. delivered by the Meteorological Agency.

- Area Mail is a free service for which subscription is not required.
- Area Mail cannot be received in the following case.
  - During a voice call
  - Out of service area
  - While power is off
  - During International roaming
  - During Airplane mode
  - While updating software
  - When a SIM other than by DOCOMO is inserted
  - While sending/receiving a message (SMS)
- Area Mail may not be received when tethering is set or during packet communications.
- Area Mail that could not be received cannot be received later.

Receiving Early Warning "Area Mail"

A notification content screen appears and you are notified by buzzer sound/dedicated ringtone and vibration.

1 Receive Area Mails automatically.

2 A dedicated ring tone sounds and notification LED flashes when an Area Mail is received.

- Ringtone and ringtone volume cannot be changed.
- The notification LED blinks only when backlight is off.

3 A message body of Area Mail appears automatically.

View received Area Mail later

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Disaster Kit].

- When you activate for the first time, "ご利用にあたって (Terms of use)" appears. Tap [Agree] to start using.

2 Tap [Early Warning "Area Mail"].

3 Select an Area Mail from the Area Mail list.

- You can view message of Area Mail.

Setting Early Warning "Area Mail"

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Disaster Kit].

2 Tap [Early Warning "Area Mail"].

3 Tap and then [Settings].

Receive setting	Set whether to receive Area Mails.
Beep tone	Set sounding time for Area Mail reception and whether to sound a dedicated ringtone even in silent mode.
Check screen image and beep tone	Check the ringtone and screen for reception of earthquake early warning, tsunami warning or disaster/ evacuation information.
Other settings	Set receiving/deleting Area Mail other than earthquake early warning, tsunami warning and disaster/ evacuation information.

❖Information

- Area Mail cannot be set when docomo mini UIM card is not inserted.

Web browser

You can view web pages using web browser like on a PC.
Web browser can be used via packet communication or Wi-Fi network.

Opening Browser

1 From the Home screen, tap .

- A browser screen appears.

Displaying web pages

Moving to a web page

1 Tap the address entry field on the top of the web page in the Browser screen.

- If web page address entry field is not displayed, flick down the screen to display.

2 Enter a web page address or keyword to be searched for.

- As you enter an address or characters, retrieved web pages list appears.

3 Tap the displayed candidates list or [確定(OK)] on the keyboard ▶Tap [実行(Go)].

- You can move the web page.

❖Information

- You can tap in Step 2 to enter search words by voice and search a web page.

Going back to the previous page

1 Tap .

Adding a new tab

Open multiple tabs and view web pages.

1 On the Browser screen, tap and .

- A new tab opens in the default home page.

Switching tabs

1 On the Browser screen, tap and then tap a tab you want to display.

Closing a tab

1 On the Browser screen, tap and then tap of a tab to close.

- Alternatively, flick a tab left or right to close it.

Zooming in/out a web page

To zoom in/out a webpage, perform any of the following operations.

- Double-tap at the point you want to zoom in/out.
- Pinch-out at the point you want to zoom in or pinch-in at the point you want to zoom out.

❖Information

- Web pages created to fit to the screen cannot be zoomed in/out.

Searching text in a web page

1 On the Browser screen, tap and tap [Find on page].

- The search bar appears in the upper part of the screen.

2 Enter a search word.

- When you enter characters, matching characters are emphasized.

Back to the previous matched item	
Go to next matched item	

3 Tap to close the search bar.

Copying text in a web page

1 On the Browser screen, touch and hold text you want to copy.

- For link set text, touch and hold it and then tap [Select text].

2 Drag or to select a range of text to copy.

- Selected text is highlighted in blue.

3 Tap (Copy).

- A message "Text copied to clipboard." appears.

4 Touch and hold the entry field on the pasting location, and tap [PASTE].

❖Information

- On some web pages, selecting characters may not be available.

Adjusting Browser settings

1 On the Browser screen, tap and [Settings] to select an item for the Browser.

Setting a home page

Set home page for opening new tab.

1 On the Browser screen, tap , then tap [Settings]▶[General].

2 Tap [Set homepage] to select item for home page setting.

Operating links

1 Open the web page you want to operate the links.

2 Tap a link.

- Selected link is highlighted in blue.
- If you touch and hold a link, the menus, "Open", "Open in new tab", "Save link", "Copy link URL" and "Select text" appear. When you touch and hold an image or a link that contains image, "Save image", "View image" and "Set as wallpaper" also appear.
- Browser recognizes some phone numbers that allow you to call the phone number. Tap the phone number to call.
- When you download a file by "Save link" from websites which require Basic authentication or SSL session, the downloading may be failed.

Managing bookmarks and history

You can check history and store many bookmarks on the terminal.

Bookmark a web page

1 On the Browser screen, display the web page you want to bookmark.

2 Tap ⋮ and [Save to bookmarks].

3 Set label etc. and tap [OK].

- You can set the following options.

Label	Set a name displayed to the bookmark.
Address	Set URL saved to the bookmark.
Account	When you set Google account etc., you can select the account as a bookmark saving location.
Add to	Add a shortcut of the bookmark on the Home screen or create a folder.

Opening a bookmark

1 On the Browser screen, tap ⋮ and [Bookmarks].

2 Tap the bookmark you want to open.

- Touch and hold a bookmark to edit or delete it.

Checking history

1 On the Browser screen, tap ⋮ and tap [Bookmarks]▶Tap "History" tab.

2 Tap the time you browsed the web page, such as [Today], [Yesterday], etc.

- To check your most visited web pages, tap [Most visited].
- To open a web page, tap an item.

❖Information

- On the Browser screen, touch and hold ⮌ to check the history.

Clearing history

1 On the Browser screen, tap ⋮ and tap [Bookmarks]▶Tap "History" tab.

2 Tap a time when you viewed, touch and hold a history you want to delete, then tap [Remove from history].

❖Information

- To delete history, tap ⋮ on the browser screen and [Settings]▶[Privacy & security]▶[Clear history]▶[OK].
- To clear temporary Internet files such as cache, on the Browser screen, tap ⋮ and tap [Settings]▶[Privacy & security] and set each item.

Viewing the setting menu

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Settings].

Setting menu

WIRELESS & NETWORKS	P.118
DEVICE	P.130
PERSONAL	P.139
SYSTEM	P.151

❖Information

- Alternatively, from the Home screen, tap and then tap [Settings], or drag the status bar downwards and tap to display the Settings screen.

Wireless & networks

You can make settings related to networks such as Wi-Fi, Bluetooth function.

Wi-Fi	P.118
Bluetooth	P.122, P.161
Data usage	P.122

More...	Airplane mode	P.124
	VPN	P.124
	Tethering & portable hotspot	P.125
	Media server settings	P.165
	NFC/Osaifu-Keitai settings	P.169
	Wi-Fi Direct	P.127
	Wi-Fi Direct settings	P.127
	Location-based Wi-Fi	P.127
	Mobile networks	P.128, P.234

Wi-Fi

Using the Wi-Fi function, you can connect to an access point for your home, company network or public wireless LAN services to use mail and Internet.

- Even when Wi-Fi is on, packet communication is available. However, while you connect Wi-Fi network, Wi-Fi comes first.
- When a Wi-Fi network is disconnected, connection is automatically switched to a LTE/WCDMA/GSM network mode. Note that packet communication fee may apply if network connection stays switched.
- Turn the Wi-Fi function to off when you do not use Wi-Fi to cut battery power consumption.

Before using Wi-Fi

To use Wi-Fi, turn on Wi-Fi and search available Wi-Fi network, then connect it.

- To access the Internet using Wi-Fi, connect to Wi-Fi network in advance.

❖Information

- Make sure to receive enough signal strength for using Wi-Fi. The signal strength of the Wi-Fi network varies by the location of the terminal. Moving closer to the Wi-Fi router might enhance the signal strength.

Reception interference caused by Bluetooth devices

Bluetooth devices and wireless LAN (IEEE802.11b/g/n) devices use the same frequency band (2.4GHz). If you use Bluetooth devices near a wireless LAN device, reception interference may occur or the communications speed may lower. Also, you may hear noise or have a connection problem. Communication may be interrupted or sound may be lost while streaming data, etc. In these cases, do the following:

- Keep the terminal and Bluetooth device to be connected wirelessly 10 or more meters away from a wireless LAN device.
- Within 10 meters, turn off the Bluetooth device to be connected.

Turning on Wi-Fi

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap of Wi-Fi or drag it to the right.

❖Information

- It may take a few seconds before the Wi-Fi connection is on.
- Alternatively, drag the status bar downwards and tap to turn on Wi-Fi.

Connecting to a Wi-Fi network

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Wi-Fi].

- Available Wi-Fi networks or secured Wi-Fi networks are displayed.

2 Select a Wi-Fi network to connect.

- If you are trying to connect to a protected Wi-Fi network, you are required to enter the security key.

❖Information

- The next time you connect to a Wi-Fi network, the security key is saved in the terminal.
- If you enter a wrong password (security key) when selecting an access point to connect, any of the following appears.
  - Saved, Secured with WEP
  - Avoided poor Internet connection*
  - Authentication problem
  - Limited connectivity

  * It may take 5 minutes or more to display the message after [Connect] is tapped.

  Check a password (security key).
  When any of above messages appears even if you enter a correct password (security key), the correct IP address may not have been acquired. Check the signal status and reconnect.
- To connect Wi-Fi network with WPS compatible device, on the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Wi-Fi]▶[Auto setup (WPS)] and follow the onscreen instructions.
- To use docomo service via Wi-Fi, setting "Wi-Fi option password" is required. To set, from the Home screen, tap ▶[Settings]▶[docomo service]▶[Wi-Fi settings for docomo apps]▶[Wi-Fi option password].

■ Wi-Fi network status icons on status bar

The following icons appear according to the Wi-Fi network connection status.

	Appears when connected to Wi-Fi network.
	Appears when communicating via Wi-Fi network.
	Appears when connected to Wi-Fi network using Auto IP function.
	Appears when any open network within the service area is detected.*

* Without connected to Wi-Fi network, you need to set Wi-Fi Network notification to on beforehand (P.121).

Disconnecting a Wi-Fi network

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Wi-Fi].

2 Tap the Wi-Fi network that you are currently connected to.

3 Tap [Forget].

Wi-Fi network status

When you are connected to a Wi-Fi network or when there are Wi-Fi networks available in your vicinity, you can see the status of these Wi-Fi networks. You can also set the terminal to notify you when an unsecured Wi-Fi network is detected.

Setting the Wi-Fi network notification to ON

1 Confirm Wi-Fi is ON and from the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Wi-Fi].

2 Tap ⋮ and [Advanced].

3 Mark "Network notification".

Scanning for Wi-Fi networks manually

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Wi-Fi].

2 Tap [Scan].
- Scanning Wi-Fi networks starts.

3 Tap a Wi-Fi network in the list to connect to it.

Adding a Wi-Fi network manually

You need to turn on the Wi-Fi setting beforehand (P.119).

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Wi-Fi].

2 Tap ⋮ and [Add network].

3 Enter a network SSID of the Wi-Fi network you want to add.

4 Tap "Security" setting item and tap a security type of the Wi-Fi network you want to add.
- 4 options, "None", "WEP", "WPA/WPA2 PSK", or "802.1x EAP", appear.

5 If required, enter security information for the Wi-Fi network you want to add.

6 Tap [Save].

Viewing detailed information on a connected Wi-Fi network

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Wi-Fi].

2 Tap the Wi-Fi network that you are currently connected to.
- The detailed network information is displayed.

❖Information

- In Step 2, tap ⋮, then tap [Advanced] to enable/disable Auto IP support or check "MAC address" and "IP address".

Wi-Fi sleep policy

By changing Wi-Fi sleep policy, you can choose to disable the Wi-Fi function in the terminal when the screen backlight turns off. You can also set the terminal to always turn on the Wi-Fi function or to always turn it on when the terminal is charged.

❖Information

- When a Wi-Fi network is disconnected, connection is automatically switched to a LTE/WCDMA/GSM network mode.

Adding a Wi-Fi sleep policy

1. **From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Wi-Fi].**
2. **Tap ⋮.**
3. **Tap [Advanced].**
4. **Tap [Keep Wi-Fi on during sleep].**
5. **Tap any of [Always]/[Only when plugged in]/[Never (increases data usage)].**

Bluetooth

Connect Bluetooth device wirelessly using Bluetooth function. For details on Bluetooth communication, see "Using Bluetooth function" (P.161).

Data usage

Enable/Disable data communication or set data usage limit.

❖Information

- You can check communication volume for each application. For some applications, the settings can be displayed.

Enabling data communication

1. **From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Data usage].**
2. **Tap of Mobile data or drag it to the right.**
3. **Read the note and tap [Yes].**

❖Information

- Alternatively, drag the status bar downwards and tap to turn on data communication.

Setting data usage limit

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Data usage].

2 Tap [Set mobile data limit] and read the notes, and then tap [OK].
- "Set mobile data limit" is marked.

❖Information
- Note that data communication will be disabled when data usage volume reaches to the limit.
- Change the setting value for data usage limit and the value for alert by dragging the right end of each bar in the graph.

Setting Data usage cycle

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Data usage].

2 Tap "Data usage cycle" setting item and tap the set period/ [Change cycle...].
- When you tap [Change cycle...], select reset date and tap [Set].

Permitting data roaming

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Data usage].

2 Tap ⋮ and [Data roaming], then read the notes and then tap [OK].
- "Data roaming" is marked.

Restricting background data

You need to mark "Set mobile data limit" beforehand (P.123).

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Data usage].

2 Tap ⋮ and [Restrict background data], then read the notes and then tap [OK].
- "Restrict background data" is marked.

Displaying Wi-Fi usage status

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Data usage].

2 Tap ⋮ and mark "Show Wi-Fi usage".
- "Wi-Fi" tab is displayed and tap it to check Wi-Fi usage condition.

Airplane mode

In this mode, the functions of using radio wave transmissions such as calling, accessing to the Internet (including sending/receiving mails), etc. are disabled. It is useful when you want to operate the terminal with no interruption of incoming calls or mails.

Turning on Airplane mode

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [More...].

2 Mark [Airplane mode].

- When you unmark "Airplane mode", the Airplane mode turns off.

❖Information

- Alternatively, press and hold [⏻] for over a second and then tap [Airplane mode] in the pop-up screen, or drag the status bar downward and tap / to switch on/off.
- Even if Airplane mode is on, Wi-Fi, Bluetooth function and Reader/Writer, P2P function can be turned on. Be careful not to use Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, Reader/Writer, P2P functions in a place where the use is prohibited such as in a airplane or hospital.

Connecting to a VPN (Virtual Private Network)

Virtual Private Network (VPN) is a technology to connect to the information in a protected local network from another network.
Generally, VPNs are provided to companies, schools and other facilities. A user can access to the information in the local network from outside of the premises.
To set up a VPN access from the terminal, you need to retrieve the information related to security from your network administrator. For details, see the following website.
http://www.sonymobile.co.jp/support/ (In Japanese only)

❖Information

- If you set sp-mode as an ISP, you cannot use PPTP.

Adding a VPN

Set the unlock method for the screen lock in advance. For details, see "Setting screen unlock method" (P.147).

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [More...]▶[VPN].

2 Tap [Add VPN network].

3 When an editing screen is displayed, follow the instruction of the network administrator to enter/set required items of VPN settings.

4 Tap [Save].

❖Information

- Added VPNs can be edited/deleted.
  To edit VPNs, touch and hold a VPN you want to change, then tap [Edit network]. Change the VPN settings as required and tap [Save]. To delete, touch and hold a VPN you want to delete, then tap [Delete network].

Connecting to a VPN

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [More...]▶[VPN].

2 Tap a VPN to connect to.

3 Enter required authentication infromation and tap [Connect].

- When you are connected to a VPN, appears in the status bar. When you are disconnected, the notification indicating to return to the VPN setting screen appears, so that you can reconnect to.

Disconnecting a VPN

1 Drag the status bar downwards.

2 Tap a notification that indicates VPN connected.

3 Tap [Disconnect].

Using tethering function

Tethering stands for using mobile devices such as smartphone as modem to allow USB compatible devices or wireless LAN devices to access the Internet.

❖Information

- Packet communication charge when using tethering varies depending on the charging plan you use. Subscription of packet flat-rate service is highly recommended.
- For details on usage charge, see the following website.
  http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/
- When the docomo mini UIM card is not inserted, data communication is disabled, or out of service area, USB tethering or Wi-Fi tethering is not available.
- For details on tethering, from the Settings screen (P.118), tap [More...]▶[Tethering & portable hotspot]▶[Help] to refer.

Setting USB tethering

Connecting the terminal to a USB compatible PC with Micro USB Cable 01 (optional), and using the terminal as a modem, you can connect the PC to the Internet.

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [More...]▶[Tethering & portable hotspot].

2 Connect the terminal to a PC using a microUSB cable (P.38).

- When you connect microUSB cable for the first time, the driver software for the terminal is installed to a PC. Wait for a while until installation is completed. After completion, if a confirmation screen for installation of PC Companion software appears, tap [Skip].

3 Tap [USB tethering].

4 Confirm "Details", then tap [OK].

- "USB tethering" is marked.

❖Information

- System requirements (OS) for USB tethering are as follows.
  - Microsoft Windows 7
  - Microsoft Windows Vista
  - Microsoft Windows XP*
  - Linux

  * For Microsoft Windows XP, installation of PC Companion is required.

Setting Wi-Fi tethering

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [More...]▶[Tethering & portable hotspot].

2 Tap [Portable Wi-Fi hotspot].

3 Confirm "Details", then tap [OK].

- "Portable Wi-Fi hotspot" is marked.

❖Information

- If USB tethering starts while connecting to Wi-Fi network, Wi-Fi network is disconnected and automatically connected when Wi-Fi tethering ends. Alternatively, when the terminal and DLNA device are connected via Wi-Fi network, starting/ending Wi-Fi tethering affects Wi-Fi connection.
- USB tethering and Wi-Fi tethering can be used at the same time.
- Alternatively, drag the status bar downwards and tap to turn on Wi-Fi tethering.

Setting up a portable Wi-Fi hotspot

You can use the terminal as a Wi-Fi access point to connect up to 10 wireless LAN devices to the Internet simultaneously.

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [More...]▶[Tethering & portable hotspot].

2 Tap [Configure Wi-Fi hotspot].

3 Enter a network SSID of the Wi-Fi access point to set.
- "Xperia AX_XXXX" is set by default.

4 Tap "Security" setting item and tap a security type of the Wi-Fi network to set.
- "None" and "WPA2 PSK" appear.

5 Enter security information of the Wi-Fi access point to set as required.

6 Tap [Save].

❖Information
- By default, the password is set at random. You can change the password as desired.

Enabling Wi-Fi Direct function

You can connect among the devices compatible with Wi-Fi Direct via Wi-Fi even without configuring access point.

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [More...]►[Wi-Fi Direct].
- When the Wi-Fi setting is on, the note appears. Read the note and tap [OK].
- "Wi-Fi Direct" is marked.

Using Wi-Fi Direct device

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [More...]►[Wi-Fi Direct settings].

2 Tap [Search].
- A list of detected Wi-Fi Direct devices appears.

3 Select a Wi-Fi Direct device to connect and tap [Connect].

❖Information
- To use the Wi-Fi Direct function, you need an application compatible with Wi-Fi Direct function. The function becomes available when you install a compatible application.

Using Location-based Wi-Fi

Connect to Wi-Fi within only neighboring place you registered to reduce the battery power consumption.

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [More...]►[Location-based Wi-Fi].

2 Tap of Location-based Wi-Fi or drag it to the right.
- When Wi-Fi network is not registered, tap [Set up Wi-Fi] to connect to Wi-Fi (P.119).

Setting an access point

An access point for connecting to the Internet (sp-mode, mopera U) is already registered. You can add or change it if necessary.
By default, sp-mode (P.129) is set for the usual access point.

Checking the access point in use

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [More...]▶[Mobile networks]▶[Access Point Names].

- Available access points (APN) appear.
- It is recommended that you use the displayed access point without editing.

❖Information

- If you have several available connections, a marked radio button to the right indicates the active network connection.

Setting an access point additionally

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [More...]▶[Mobile networks]▶[Access Point Names].

2 Tap ⋮.

3 Tap [New APN].

4 Tap [Name], enter a name and tap [OK].

5 Tap [APN] and enter the access point name and tap [OK].

6 Tap and enter all other information required by your network operator.

7 Tap ⋮ and [Save].

❖Information

- Do not change the MCC/MNC. If you change MCC/MNC to other than the default value (440/10), the set new APN does not appear on the APNs screen. When the set new APN does not appear on the APNs screen, tap ⋮ to make APN settings with "Reset to default" or "New APN" again.
- Note that, when using the prediction conversion by one-byte alphabet entry mode (English mode) with mark in "Auto space" (P.65) on Japanese keyboard settings screen, spaces may be entered automatically when the prediction option is confirmed. In this case, delete spaces.

Using block access point change function

Set to prevent changing access point automatically.

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [More...]▶[Mobile networks].

2 Mark "Block access point change".

❖Information

- This function is enabled by default. If disabled, access point is changed automatically and unexpected charges may apply.
- Some applications you installed may not be operated correctly when this function is enabled.

Initializing an access point

By initializing an access point, the default state is restored.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [More...]▶[Mobile networks]▶[Access Point Names].**

2 **Tap ⋮ and tap [Reset to default].**

sp-mode

sp-mode is ISP for NTT DOCOMO smartphone. In addition to accessing Internet, you can use the mail service using the same address as imode mail (@docomo.ne.jp), etc. sp-mode is a service requiring subscription. For details on sp-mode, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

mopera U

mopera U is ISP of NTT DOCOMO's Internet connection. If you have subscribed to mopera U, you can use Internet after making the simple settings. mopera U is a service requiring subscription.

Setting mopera U

1 **From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [More...]▶[Mobile networks]▶[Access Point Names].**

2 **Mark [mopera U]/[mopera U設定 (mopera U settings)] radio button.**

- Return to the Home screen and open the Browser. You can enjoy the nice Internet access.

❖Information

- "mopera U設定 (mopera U settings)" is an access point for setting mopera U. When you use the access point for setting mopera U, packet communication charges for setting do not apply. Note that you can set only the initial setting screen or the change setting screen. For details on mopera U settings, refer to mopera U website.

Device

Call settings

You can use the network services and search for available networks. For Call settings, see "Call settings" (P.91).

Sound

Set ringtones, operation sound, vibrator, etc.

Clear Phase™	Set sound quality optimized for the built-in speaker.
xLOUD™	Set audio playback level enhancement technology ("xLOUD") to enjoy powerful sounds with the built-in speaker when playing WALKMAN, YouTube, Album, etc.
Volumes	P.130
Silent mode	P.131
Phone ringtone	P.131
Default notification	P.131
Vibrate on ring	P.131
Dial pad touch tones	P.131
Touch sounds	P.131
Screen lock sound	Set whether to emit sound for unlocking the screen lock.
Vibrate on touch	Set whether to vibrate the terminal for some operations such as specified software key operation.

Adjusting each sound volume

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Sound]►[Volumes].

- Adjust the volume of following items.
  - Music, video, games, & other media
  - Ringtone & notifications
  - Alarms

2 Drag the slider to the right or left.

- Drag the slider to the left for volume down, or to the right for volume up.

3 Tap [OK].

❖Information

- Even if alarm volume is set in Volumes, "Alarm volume" set in "Alarm & clock" (P.224) is given priority.

Adjusting the ringtone volume with the volume key

1 From the Home screen, press up or down of [◁ ▷].

- The volume adjustment bar appears, you can adjust the volume up or down.

❖Information

- You can also press [◁ ▷] or [⏻] to mute the ringtone for an incoming call.

Setting Silent mode

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Sound]▶[Silent mode].

2 Tap any of [Off]/[Vibrate]/[Mute].

❖Information

- Alternatively, press and hold [⏻] for over a second and then tap / / in the pop-up screen, or drag the status bar downward and tap / / to switch Mute (Ringtone 0), Vibrate or Off (disabling Silent mode).
- Setting the phone to Silent mode does not mute sounds for shutter, playback of video or music, alarm, dialpad operation sound during a call or when [End call] is tapped, etc. Note that adjusting volume for "Ringtone & notifications" in Volumes (P.130) or pressing the upper part of [◁ ▷] cancels Silent mode.

Setting a ringtone

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Sound]▶[Phone ringtone].

2 Select a ringtone and tap [Done].

❖Information

- You can set voice file in ".wav"/".m4a" or in other format which is transferred from Media Go (P.158) or downloaded from the Internet as a ringtone.
- To set a ringtone other than the ones stored by default, tap .

Setting a notification ringtone

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Sound]▶[Default notification].

2 Select a ringtone and tap [Done].

❖Information

- To set a notification other than the ones stored by default, tap .

Setting vibration when receiving a call

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Sound] and mark "Vibrate on ring".

- Ringtone sounds and the terminal vibrates when there is an incoming call.

Setting touch tones to ON

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Sound].

2 Mark "Dial pad touch tones" and "Touch sounds".

- If you unmark them, any operation tones do not sound when you tap.

❖Information

- "Dial pad touch tones" is a sound for operations on the dial pad. "Touch sounds" is a sound for selecting menu.
- To set the key sound of software keyboard, set from "Setting character entry" (P.62).

Display

Set brightness, orientation of the screen, etc.

Mobile BRAVIA Engine 2	To view photos or movies colorfully and beautifully, set image quality improving procedure (Mobile BRAVIA Engine 2). It adjusts contrast, color shade, etc.※
Brightness	P.132
Wallpaper	P.73
Auto-rotate screen	P.46
Sleep	P.132
Font size	Set font size.
Theme	Set a background for the Home screen, Settings screen, etc.
Lock screen	P.133

* Setting Mobile BRAVIA Engine 2 improves image quality when using Xperia™ application.

Adjusting the screen brightness

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Display]►[Brightness].

2 Drag the slider to the right or left.

- Drag the slider to the left for dimmer screen, or to the right for brighter screen.

3 Tap [OK].

❖Information

- Mark "Adapt to lighting conditions" to adjust brightness automatically according to the ambient brightness with reference to the manually set brightness.
- Drag the status bar downwards and tap to set the screen brightness to the maximum value.

Adjusting the idle time before the screen turns off

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Display]►[Sleep].

2 Select a time option before the screen back light turns off.

❖Information

- To turn the screen back light off immediately, press [⏻].

Setting information displayed on the unlock screen

Yon can set notifications displayed on the unlock screen (P.40).

❖Information

- To display notifications, on Preferred apps settings (P.70), set "Set all to" or "Lock screen" to "Xperia™", and set "Slide/Touch" for screen unlock method (P.147) in advance.

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Display]▶[Lock screen].

■ Displaying notification

Mark "Missed calls"/"New sp-mode mails"/"New messages"/"New emails"/"Calendar events".

- By default, "Missed calls", "New sp-mode mails" and "New messages" are marked.
- When you log in to Facebook and set "Xperia™ with Facebook" (P.141), "Facebook notifications" appears. Mark it to display new Facebook message notifications on the unlock screen (notifications such as "Friend Requests" or "Event Invitation" are not displayed).

■ Hiding detailed information on notification

Mark "Privacy".

- Notification and a number of messages, calls, etc. are displayed while information on the other party or message contents are not displayed.

■ Changing shortcuts of applications

Tap [Application shortcuts]▶[Add new shortcut]/[Contacts]/[Messaging]/[Search] and select the application you want to change.

- By default, "Contacts", "Messaging" and "Search" are set.

■ Changing wallpaper

Tap [Wallpaper]▶[Album]/[Xperia™ wallpapers].

- For details on setting procedure, see Step 2 (P.74) in "Changing wallpaper".

Storage

Check memory volume of the phone memory, internal storage, microSD card, and USB storage. And you can delete data in the internal storage, microSD card and USB storage and format.
USB storage is an external memory such as a microSD card connected to the terminal using commercially available reader/writer cable.

PHONE MEMORY	
Total space	Check the phone memory for apps, available space, etc.
INTERNAL STORAGE	
Total space	Check memory space for Apps, Pictures/videos, Audio (music, ringtones, etc.), Downloads, Misc. and available space in the internal storage.
Clear internal storage	P.134
SD CARD	
Total space	Check available memory space etc. of microSD card.
Unmount SD card*	Cancel connection of microSD card to remove it safely.
Mount SD card*	Have microSD card recognized.
Erase SD card	P.135
EXTERNAL USB STORAGE	
Total space	Check available memory space of USB storage.
Unmount USB storage*	Cancel connection of USB storage to remove it safely.
Mount USB storage*	Have USB storage recognized.
Clear USB storage	P.135

* Display changes depending on condition of USB storage or microSD card recognition.

❖Information

- Note that when available memory of internal storage becomes 32KB or less, microSD card cannot be mounted.

Formatting the internal storage of the terminal

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Storage].

2 Tap [Clear internal storage]▶[Clear internal storage].

- Enter your screen unlock method as required.

3 Tap [Erase everything].

❖Information

- Formatting the terminal deletes all the data in it.
- While formatting, the terminal displays a message indicating that deleting is in process. You cannot receive a call.

Formatting microSD card

1 **From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Storage].**

2 **Tap [Erase SD card]▶[Erase SD card].**
- Enter your screen unlock method as required.

3 **Tap [Erase everything].**

❖Information
- Formatting microSD card deletes all the data in it.

Formatting USB storage

Insert external memory such as a microSD card into commercially available reader/writer cable and connect the cable to the terminal in advance.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Storage].**

2 **Tap [Clear USB storage]▶[Erase].**
- Enter your screen unlock method as required.

3 **Tap [Erase everything].**

❖Information
- Formatting USB storage (external memory such as microSD card) deletes all the data in it.

Increasing the available memory of the terminal

If the terminal has a small memory, you can perform the following operations to increase available memory.
- In the browser, you can clear all temporary Internet files and browser history information. For details, see "Clearing history" (P.117).
- Uninstall programs that you no longer use. For details, see "Deleting installed application" (P.137).

Power management

You can check battery consumption and set Power Saver.

Battery	Display battery consumption, remaining battery level, etc.
Power Saver	Set Power Saver to reduce battery power consumption.

Apps

Manage and delete installed applications, display memory usage condition, etc. or change the settings.

Viewing permitted operation of the applications in the terminal

You can check functions which are permitted to access to each application in the progress of performing, such as network communication function or location information function of the terminal.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Apps].**

2 **Tap an application to view.**

3 **Flick the screen up to view permitted operations.**

- If all permitted operations do not appear, tap [Show all].

Shutting down an application

If a pop-up window appears to indicate the application does not reply, you can force quit the application.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Apps].**

2 **Tap an application to force-quite.**

3 **Tap [Force stop].**

4 **Read the notes and then tap [OK].**

❖Information

- When you do not want to force stop the application, tap [Cancel] and wait for a reply of the application.

Deleting all data of the application

- Before deleting all installed application data, back up contents related to the application that you want to save including data saved in the application.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Apps].**

2 **Tap an application to delete the data.**

3 **Tap [Clear data].**

4 **Read the notes and then tap [OK].**

Deleting installed application

- Before deleting installed application, back up contents related to the application that you want to save including data saved in the application.
- Some applications cannot be deleted.

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Apps].

2 Tap an application to be deleted.

3 Tap [Uninstall].

4 Tap [OK].

5 When uninstallation is completed, tap [OK].

❖Information

- Some applications pre-installed in the terminal cannot be uninstalled. For applications which cannot be uninstalled, disabling is possible (P.137).
- Applications downloaded from Play Store are recommended to be deleted from the Google Play screen (P.169).
- Applications can be deleted from the Application screen. For details, see "Uninstalling an application" (P.82).

Disabling application

You can disable some applications which cannot be uninstalled or services. Disabled applications are not displayed on the Application screen and you cannot execute them, but they are not uninstalled.

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Apps].

2 Tap "All" tab.

3 Tap an application to be disabled.

4 Tap [Disable].

5 Read the notes and then tap [OK].

- To enable again, tap [Enable].

❖Information

- When you disabled an application, some other applications linked to the disabled application may not be operated correctly. Enable the disabled application again to operate them correctly.

Deleting cache of the application

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Apps].

2 Tap an application to delete cache.

3 Tap [Clear cache].

Deleting settings for activating the application

You can delete settings for activating the application and restore to the default.

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Apps].

2 Tap an application to delete its settings.

3 Tap [Clear defaults].

Xperia™

Set preferred application in the terminal. You can also set synchronization function for Facebook in the terminal, make settings for USB connection or Wi-Fi connection to a PC or other devices.

About PlayStation Certified	Check trademarks of PlayStation.
Connectivity	P.154
Preferred apps settings	P.70
Screen mirroring*1	Connect to a TV that supports Screen mirroring*2 to display the screen of the terminal.
Smart Connect	Set to activate applications automatically when you connect the Stereo Headset with Microphone (Sample), a commercially available earphone or the AC adapter for charging. Also, set how applications operate when activating or deactivating.
Xperia™ with Facebook	P.141

*1 Data with copyright protection cannot displayed.
*2 Connection is available only with a device that supports HDCP.

PERSONAL

docomo service

You can set passwords for applications provided by docomo or to use the services supporting AUTO-GPS.

Application manager	Set to check update for applications regularly.
Wi-Fi settings for docomo apps	Set to use docomo service when connecting Wi-Fi.
docomo apps password	Set a password for applications provided by docomo. docomo apps password is set "0000" by default.
AUTO-GPS	Set to use the services supporting AUTO-GPS.
docomo location information	Set location information function for imadoco search, imadocokantan search and Keitai-Osagashi Service.
docomo Wi-Fi Easy Connection	Set the terminal for using docomo Wi-Fi or home Wi-Fi.
データ量確認アプリ (Check data volume application)	Set totaling cycle or starting/stopping measuring for データ量確認アプリ (Check data volume application).
Open source licenses	View open source licenses.

Accounts & sync

You can manage (add or delete) online service accounts or synchronize contacts, messages, etc. saved in online services with the terminal.

Setting Google account

You can create a Google account on your terminal and use Google services such as Gmail, Google Talk, Google Calendar, Google Play, etc.
You can set multiple Google accounts on the terminal.

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Accounts & sync]▶[Add account]▶[Google].

2 Follow the registration wizard, set a Google account.

- If you have no Google account, create an account.
- If you have already the Google account, sign in.

❖Information

- You can use the terminal without creating your Google account, however the services such as Google Talk, Gmail, Google Play, etc. are not available.
- To log in, you need a Google account and a password.
- When you sign in, "Backup and restore" screen may appear. To backup applications, bookmark settings, etc. using Google account, mark "Keep this phone backed up with my Google Account" and then tap [Next].
- Tap Google account displayed on the "Accounts & sync" screen and synchronize each data from the following items manually.

Sync Browser	Synchronize browser settings saved in Google account such as bookmarks with web function of the terminal.
Sync Calendar	Synchronize calendar information such as schedule, etc., stored in Google account with Calendar in the terminal.
Sync Contacts	Synchronize contacts stored in Gmail with the phonebook stored in the terminal.
Sync Gmail	Synchronize contacts stored in Gmail with the Email history stored in the terminal.
Sync Google Photos*	Synchronize web album Google Photos with album in the terminal.
Sync Google Play Movies & TV	Synchronize with Google Play movies.

* If a lot of photos are included to Picasa web album used in Google account or web album uploaded by Google+, it may consume a lot of battery power or increase data communication volume during the synchronization.

- If you set a Google account and use Google+ in it, "Sync Google+" appears. Tap it to synchronize and display instant upload photos in the Album in the terminal.
- Make sure to check if the data connection is available before sign in to the Google account. For checking the data connection status, see "Status icon" (P.41).

Setting Facebook account

When you register or sign in Facebook, you can display profile information published by online "Friends" to Phonebook. And you can display Facebook updates of "Friends" in Timescape.

❖Information

- If you do not have a Facebook account, you can also create a new account in the following website. http://www.facebook.com
- If you download and install client applications for Twitter or mixi, you can set up accounts and synchronize contacts information in the same manner as for Facebook.

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Accounts & sync]▶[Add account]▶[Facebook].

- If you already have a Facebook account and set account from Phonebook or Timescape of the terminal, you need not add a new account.

2 Enter your sign in information.

- If you have no Facebook account, register an account.
- If you have Facebook account, sign in.

Setting Xperia™ with Facebook

Set Facebook account to display in the status bar. Drag the status bar downwards and set "Xperia™ with Facebook" to synchronize functions of applications in the terminal.

1 Drag the status bar downwards and tap [Xperia™ with Facebook].

2 Tap [Facebook integration] and read the notes and then tap [Accept]▶[Done].

- "Xperia™ with Facebook" is marked.

❖Information

- Alternatively, from the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Accounts & sync]▶[Add account]▶[Xperia™ with Facebook].
- Tap "Xperia™ with Facebook" account displayed on the "Accounts & sync" screen to set the following.

Application control settings	Set apps connected to Facebook with the terminal. If you mark functions, applications in the terminal synchronize with Facebook.
Sync Calendar	Synchronize events such as Friends' birthdays, etc., stored in Facebook with Calendar in the terminal.
Sync Contacts	Synchronize profile of Friends stored in Facebook with the phonebook stored in the terminal.
Sync Friends' music	Synchronize music that Friends specified "Like" in Facebook with WALKMAN in the terminal.

Setting other account

You can set docomo account, Evernote, Email, Corporate (Exchange ActiveSync) other than Google account (P.139) or Facebook account (P.140).

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Accounts & sync]►[Add account].

2 Tap an account type and follow the onscreen instructions.

❖Information

- Use docomo account when you use " ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)" application (P.227) provided by NTT DOCOMO. docomo account is set by default.

Removing account

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Accounts & sync] and select a service account you want to delete.

2 Tap ⋮, then tap [Remove account]►[Remove account].

❖Information

- The first Google account is registered as backup account. When a backup account is removed, caution appears on the status bar.
- docomo account cannot be deleted.

Setting Auto-sync

Synchronize information of online service with the terminal. You can display and edit information on the terminal or a PC.
You need to set your online service account (Google account, Facebook account, etc.) in the terminal to synchronize in advance.

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Accounts & sync].

2 Tap or drag it to the right.

3 Read the notes and then tap [OK].

4 Tap an online service whose account is set.

5 Tap to mark an item for automatic synchronization.

- If the items to be synchronized are marked and are displayed beside checkboxes, synchronization starts. When is not displayed, tap and tap [Sync now] to start synchronization.

❖Note

- Tap or drag it to the right to permit to synchronize with your Gmail, calendar, contacts, and profile information published by "Friends", etc. in Google account automatically. These communications may cause you to pay packet communications charges.
- If (auto-sync is disabled) is set, you can synchronize manually. On the settings screen (P.118), tap [Accounts & sync], tap the online service where your account is set to display the synchronizing items, then tap items you want to synchronize.

Canceling synchronization

1 Tap during a synchronization.

2 Tap [Cancel sync].

Location services

Set whether to permit the location information service.

Google's location service	P.217
GPS satellites	P.217
Location & Google search	Set whether to permit Google to use location information using result etc. of Google search.

Security

Set options related to security.

Screen lock	P.146
Improve face matching*1	Improve face lock accuracy.
Make pattern visible*1	Set whether to show pattern when entering pattern.
Automatically lock*1	Set interval time before locking automatically when turning off the screen.
Power button instantly locks*1	Set whether to enable screen lock by pressing .
Vibrate on touch*1	Set whether to vibrate when unlocking operation.
Owner info	Set text to be displayed on the unlock screen.
Encrypt phone*2	Set to require entering a security code or password to decode each time you turn on the power.

Set up SIM card lock	P.146
Make passwords visible	Set whether to show the input character before " ・ " appears on the password entry screen.
Device administrators	Set whether to enable device administrator.
Unknown sources	P.148
Trusted credentials	Allow applications to access secure certificates and other credentials.*3
Install from internal storage	Install encrypted certificates from internal storage.
Clear credentials	Clear all certificates or credential information from the credential storage*4.

*1 Displayed items vary depending on "Screen lock" settings.
*2 To decrypt, reset the terminal (P.150) to the default status.
*3 Set the password to the credential storage in advance.
*4 Save certificates and credential information in the credential storage.

Protecting docomo mini UIM card

Some functions provided for convenient use of the terminal require the security code to use them. Besides the security code for locking the terminal, the network security code necessary for the network services etc. are available. Make use of the terminal using an appropriate security code according to the purpose.

Notes on the security codes

- Avoid using a number that is easy to guess, such as "birth date", "part of your phone number", "street address number or room number", "1111", and "1234". Make sure to make a note of the security code you set lest you should forget it.
- Be very careful not to let others know your security code. If your security code is known by anyone else, DOCOMO shall have no liability for any loss due to any unauthorized use of it.
- If you forget your security codes, you must bring your official identification (such as drivers license), the terminal, and docomo mini UIM card with you to the nearest docomo Shop. For details, contact the "General Inquiries" on the last page.

- The PUK code is written on the subscription form (copy for customer) handed at the subscription in the docomo Shop. If you subscribed other than docomo Shop, you must bring your official identification (such as drivers license), the docomo mini UIM card with you to the nearest docomo Shop or contact the "General Inquiries" on the last page.

Network security code

The network security code is a 4-digit number necessary for identification or using the docomo Network Services at reception of your request in docomo Shop or at docomo Information Center. It can be set any number at the subscription and also changed later by yourself.
You can change your network security code to new one using a PC if you have "docomo ID"/"Password" for "My docomo", the General support site for PC.
Alternatively, from the Home screen, tap [dmenu] and [お客様サポートへ (To Customer Support)]▶[各種お申込・お手続き (Subscription/Procedure)] to change the security code yourself.

* For information on "My docomo" and "お客様サポート (Customer Support)", see the previous page of the last page.

PIN code

You can set security code which named PIN code to docomo mini UIM card. It is set "0000" at the subscription. They can be changed by yourself.
PIN code is a 4- to 8-digit security number (code) that must be entered for user confirmation to prevent unauthorized use by a third party every time you insert the docomo mini UIM card into the terminal or when the terminal is powered on. Entering the PIN code enables making/receiving calls and terminal operation.

- If you use a newly purchased terminal with docomo mini UIM card you have been using, use the PIN code set on the former terminal. If you did not change the setting, the code is "0000".
- If you enter a wrong PIN code 3 times consecutively, the PIN code is locked and cannot be used anymore. In this case, unlock with "Personal Unblocking Key (PUK code)" (P.146).

Personal Unblocking Key (PUK code)

The PUK code is an 8-digit number for canceling the locked PIN code. The PUK code cannot be changed by yourself.

- If you failed to enter PUK code 10 times consecutively, the docomo mini UIM card is locked. Please contact a docomo Shop.

Enabling SIM card lock

By setting PIN (security code) and entering PIN code when powered on, you can protect the docomo mini UIM card from improper use.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Security]►[Set up SIM card lock]►[Lock SIM card].**

2 **Enter PIN code and tap [OK].**
- "Lock SIM card" is marked.

❖Information

- You can unlock SIM card lock by the same operation.

Entering the PIN code when powered on

1 **On the PIN code entry screen, enter the PIN code.**

2 **Tap [OK].**

Changing the PIN code

- You can change only when you activate the SIM card lock.

1 **From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Security]►[Set up SIM card lock]►[Change SIM PIN].**

2 **Enter the current PIN code and tap [OK].**

3 **Enter a new PIN code and tap [OK].**

4 **Enter a new PIN code again and tap [OK].**

Unlocking PIN lock

1 **Tap [PUK code] field and enter PUK code.**

2 **Tap the [New PIN Code] field and enter a new PIN code and tap [OK].**

3 **Enter a new PIN code again and tap [OK].**

Screen lock

You can secure your data by requiring a screen unlock pattern every time the terminal is turned on or every time it is activated from sleep mode.
There are 5 types of screen lock settings: "Slide/Touch", "Face Unlock", "Pattern", "PIN" and "Password" (P.147).

Setting screen unlock method

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Security]▶[Screen lock].

2 Tap [Slide/Touch]/[Face Unlock]/[Pattern]/[PIN]/[Password].

- When you tap [Face Unlock], follow the onscreen instructions to set face authentication. For unlocking when the Face Unlock cannot be unlocked, "Pattern" or "PIN" is required to select to set.
- When you tap [Pattern], follow the onscreen instructions to enter unlock pattern.
  Set security question and answer in case you forget the pattern.
- When you tap [PIN], follow the onscreen instructions to enter 4 - 16 digit numbers. This "PIN" code is different from a PIN code to be set to docomo mini UIM card (P.145).
- When you tap [Password], follow the onscreen instructions to enter 4 - 16 digit characters including alphabets.

Changing screen unlock method

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Security]▶[Screen lock].

2 Enter the current unlock pattern/PIN/password.

3 Select a new unlock method.

- For setting procedure, see Step 2 (P.147) of "Setting screen unlock method".

Locking the screen

Once screen unlock method (P.147) is set, the screen is locked when the sleep mode is set or ⏻ is pressed.

Unlocking the screen lock

1 Press ⏻ to turn the backlight on.

2 Enter unlock screen method.

- Enter the set unlock method (Slide or Tap/Face unlock/unlock pattern/PIN/password).

If you forget how to unlock

■ If you set "Pattern"

"Incorrect pattern" appears when you enter incorrect unlock pattern 5 times consecutively.

- Tap [Next], and answer the security question that you set for the unlock pattern setting, then tap [Unlock] to unlock the screen lock.
- If you set Google account, on the "Incorrect pattern" screen, tap [Next] to display "Answer question" and "Enter Google account details".
  - Mark "Answer question" and tap [Next], and answer the security question, then tap [Unlock] to unlock the screen lock.
  - Mark "Enter Google account details", tap [Next], and enter Google account and password, then tap [Sign in] to unlock the screen lock.
- When setting new unlock pattern after unlocking screen lock, "Screen unlocked" appears. Tap [Yes] to reset unlock pattern.

❖Information

- Tap [Try again] to retry entering pattern in 30 seconds.
- When you tap [Try again]▶[Forgot pattern?], the screen after tapping [Next] is displayed.
- If you set multiple Google accounts, enter one of those accounts and password to unlock the screen.

■ If you set "PIN"/"Password"

Please contact a docomo Shop.

Canceling screen lock

You can cancel screen lock pattern after you set.

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Security]▶[Screen lock].

2 Enter the current unlock pattern/ PIN/password.

3 Tap [None].

Permitting downloading unknown source's application

Before you can download unknown source's applications, set the terminal to enable downloading.

Applications you download may be of unknown origin. To protect your terminal and personal data, only download applications from trusted sources such as the Google Play etc.

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Security].

2 Tap [Unknown sources].

3 Read the notes and then tap [OK].

- "Unknown sources" is marked.

Language & input

You can select language and input method.

Language	P.149
Spelling correction	Set spelling correction.
Personal dictionary	Register words.
Default	Set input method.
Google voice typing	P.62
Moji-Henshu	
Xperia™ Chinese keyboard	
Xperia™ Japanese keyboard	
Xperia™ keyboard	
Voice Search	P.149
Text-to-speech output	P.149
Pointer speed	Set pointer speed of mouse etc.

Changing phone language

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Language & input]►[Language].

2 Select a language and tap [Done].

- When you select Japanese, "完了 (Done)" is displayed, but its display varies by the language you selected.

❖Information

- If you choose the wrong language and cannot read the menu texts, see the help of the following website.
  http://www.sonymobile.co.jp/so-01e/faq.html (In Japanese only)

Setting Voice Search

Language	Select language used for Google voice search.
SafeSearch	Set filter explicit.
Block offensive words	Set whether to display recognized offensive voice results.

Text-to-speech settings

Google Text-to-speech Engine*	Set language for text-to speech and audio synthesis engine to read out text.
Pico TTS*	Make settings for installed voice synthesis engine.
Speech rate	Set speed at reading out text.
Listen to an example	Playback sample of audio synthesis.

* Japanese is not supported.

Backup & reset

Set backup of application etc. or restore the terminal to default by using Google account.

Back up my data	Set to backup applications, settings, data, etc. to Google server.
Backup account	Set an account for backup to Google server.
Automatic restore	Set to restore backup settings or data when re-installing application.
Data transfer mode	Set to the mode to transfer the data in the terminal using the docomo shop terminal.
Factory data reset	P.150

Resetting the terminal

Resetting the terminal deletes all data, including downloaded applications and accounts, and resets the terminal back to the initial (default) state. Make sure to back up important data you have on the terminal before you reset the terminal.
For the initial settings, see "Initial settings" (P.40).

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Backup & reset]▶[Factory data reset]▶[Reset phone].

- Mark "Erase internal storage" to delete all contents (music, photos, videos, etc.) on the internal storage.
- Enter your screen unlock method as required.

2 Tap [Erase everything].

- The terminal restarts automatically.

❖Information

- While restarting or resetting the terminal, just wait. If you remove the battery pack while restarting or resetting the terminal, it may cause malfunction.

Setup guide

Display Setup guide and make the terminal settings.

- For details, see "Initial settings" (P.40).

SYSTEM

Date & time

You can change the date and time in the terminal.
To set date/time or time zone manually, unmark "Automatic date & time" or "Automatic time zone" to disable network-provided time/time zone in advance.

Automatic date & time	Adjust date and time automatically by using network-provided information.
Automatic time zone	Adjust time zone automatically by using network-provided information.
Set date	P.151
Set time	P.151
Select time zone	P.151
Use 24-hour format	P.152
Select date format	P.152

❖Information

- Correction of the time differences may not be performed correctly depending on the overseas telecommunication carrier. In that case, set time zone manually (P.151).

Setting the date

1. **From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Date & time]▶[Set date].**
2. **Drag number to adjust date.**
3. **Tap [Set].**

Setting the time

1. **From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Date & time]▶[Set time].**
2. **Drag number to adjust hour and minute.**
   - When you unmark "Use 24-hour format", drag "am"/"pm" to switch AM/PM.
3. **Tap [Set].**

Setting the time zone

1. **From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Date & time]▶[Select time zone].**
2. **Select time zone you want to set.**

Setting the time format

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Date & time] and mark/ unmark "Use 24-hour format".

- Mark the checkbox to shift to 24-hour format, and unmark to shift to 12-hour format.

Setting the date format

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Date & time]►[Select date format].

2 Select date format you want to set.

Accessibility

You can set user support service which sounds or vibrates according to users operation and call end operation.

TalkBack	Set user support service (TalkBack).
Large text	Enlarge text size.
Power button ends call	Set to end a call by pressing ⏻.
Auto-rotate screen	P.46
Speak passwords	Output password by voice sound.
Touch & hold delay	Set response time for operation of touching and holding the screen.
Install web scripts	Set whether to install script from Google.

Developer options

Put the terminal into debug mode when connecting USB or set the screen backlight to ON while charging.

Keeping the screen backlight ON while charging

1 From the Settings screen (P.118), tap [Developer options].

2 Mark "Stay awake".

About phone

You can check your own phone number, signal level, legal information, etc.

Software update	P.250
Status	Check your own phone number, signal level, battery level, etc.
Legal information	Check open source license or Google terms of use, etc.
Model number	Check version and number.
Android version	
Baseband version	
Kernel version	
Build number	

Handling a file

Files in the terminal should be operated on the file handling application. For example, to delete files saved in a microSD card or internal storage, use the deletion function of each application.
With "Share" function of each application, you can exchange files sending to/receiving from other compatible devices via infrared communication, Bluetooth or by email file attachment.
In addition, with the terminal connected to a PC, you can move files to the PC from the internal storage or a mounted microSD card or delete those files.
If you install PC Companion and use Media Go, you can manage files between a PC and the terminal mutually. Using PC Companion, you can synchronize contacts and calendar in the terminal with a PC.

Transferring and moving data

You can transfer and move images, music data and some other data. Sharing some data may not be permitted due to copyright.

Using microUSB cable

By connecting the terminal and a PC with the Micro USB cable 01 (optional), you can exchange data between the terminal and the PC.

Connecting the terminal and a PC using a microUSB cable

1 Connect the terminal to a PC using a microUSB cable (P.38).

- When you connect microUSB cable for the first time, the driver software for the terminal is installed to a PC. Wait for a while until installation is completed. A confirmation screen for installation of PC Companion software appears when the driver software installation is completed.

- The terminal is connected by "Media transfer mode (MTP)" which is set by default. Follow onscreen instructions on a PC to access Internal Storage and microSD Card of the terminal.

2 Tap [Skip].

❖Information

- Screen that appears when connecting to a PC may vary depending on the operating system (OS) of a PC.
- From the Home screen, tap and tap [Settings]▶[Xperia™]▶ [Connectivity] to check connection mode and change the settings as follows.

Install PC Companion	Display PC Companion installation wizard when connected to a PC.
USB connection mode	Switch USB connection mode to "Media transfer mode (MTP)"/"Mass storage mode (MSC)" when connecting to a PC.
TRUSTED DEVICES	Connect the terminal and a host device in a pair via Wi-Fi network (P.157).

- Connecting with "Mass storage mode (MSC)" also accesses microSD card as a removal disk. microSD card cannot be accessed from the terminal and functions using microSD card may become unavailable in Camera, Album, etc. while connecting to a PC.
- If you install PC Companion by tapping [Install] in Step 2, you can use the following applications on a PC for managing media files, creating backup files, etc. when connecting the terminal and the PC. For details, check on the PC Companion screen after installation.

Support Zone	Update software of the terminal by connecting to a PC (P.252).
Contacts Setup	Copy the contacts data of the mobile phone previously used to the terminal.
Media Go	P.158
Contacts	Synchronize contacts between the terminal and Outlook/Lotus Notes/ Google.
Calendar	Synchronize calendar between the terminal and Outlook/Lotus Notes/ Google.
Back up and restore	Back up the terminal data or move the data to another terminal.
File Manager	Check file type, update time, location, etc. on the terminal.

- When the terminal is connected to a PC, charging starts automatically. For details, see "Charging with a PC" (P.38).

Disconnecting the microUSB cable safely

- Do not disconnect the microUSB cable during data transferring. Data may be damaged.
- If you connect the terminal in the Media transfer mode (MTP), make sure that data transfer is not in progress and just disconnect the microUSB cable.

■ Mass storage mode (MSC)

1 Drag the status bar downwards.

2 Tap [SD card connected].
- "SD card disconnected" appears in the status bar.

3 Disconnect the microUSB cable.

Dragging and dropping data on the terminal and a PC

■ Media transfer mode (MTP)

1 Connect the terminal to a PC using a microUSB cable.
- "Int. storage & SD card connected" appears in the status bar.

2 Drag and drop selected data between the terminal and a PC.

■ Mass storage mode (MSC)

1 Connect the terminal to a PC using a microUSB cable.
- "SD card connected" appears in the status bar.

2 Drag and drop selected data between the terminal and a PC.

❖Information

- You can transfer files using a microUSB cable on most devices and the following operating systems (OSs) that supports the USB mass-storage memory interface.
  - Microsoft Windows 7
  - Microsoft Windows Vista
  - Microsoft Windows XP

Connecting the terminal to a PC on a Wi-Fi network

If the terminal and a PC* are connected in a pair on a Wi-Fi network, automatic connection/disconnection of internal storage of the terminal with a PC is enabled when the terminal user comes in and out of the Wi-Fi area. You can easily access to files in the internal storage of the terminal from a connected PC.

* Use Microsoft Windows 7 to make a pair setting. Pair setting cannot be made under Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows Vista or other OS.

1 Connect a PC you want to set in a pair to a Wi-Fi network.

2 Connect the terminal to a Wi-Fi network (P.119).

3 Connect the terminal to a PC using a microUSB cable.

- When a confirmation screen for installation of PC Companion software appears on the terminal, tap [Skip].

4 Make sure that the terminal is displayed as a portable device on "Computer" the screen of the PC.

5 Right click the portable device icon, then click "ネットワーク構成 (network composition)".

6 Click "次へ (Next)".

7 On the pop-up screen of the terminal, tap [Pair].

8 On the network composition of the portable device screen of the PC, click " 完了 (Done)".

9 Disconnect the microUSB cable.

10 From the Home screen, tap and tap [Settings]▶[Xperia™]▶[Connectivity]▶"Host name" (PC name) in the "TRUSTED DEVICES" field.

11 Tap [Connect].

- The terminal and the PC are connected in "Media transfer mode (MTP)" on a Wi-Fi network, and you can exchange data files.

❖Information

- From the Home screen, tap and tap [Settings]▶[Xperia™]▶[Connectivity] to display "Host name" (PC name) in the "TRUSTED DEVICES" field. To cancel connection setting, tap the host name and [Forget]. Until "Forget" is tapped, the connection setting retains even if you connect/disconnect repeatedly by coming in and out of a Wi-Fi area.
- If the privacy separator function for Wi-Fi network (access point) is enabled, pair setting cannot be made.

Using Media Go

The Media Go computer application helps you transfer and manage media content in the terminal and PC.
With Media Go, you can load music from a CD to a PC and transfer to the terminal.

- You can install Media Go from PC Companion. Activate PC Companion installed in a PC and install Media Go with "Sony PC Companion" screen. For information on how to install PC Companion, see "When PC Companion is not installed on your PC" (P.252).

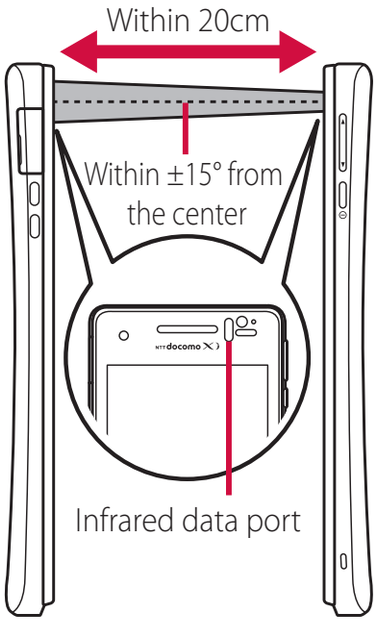
❖Information

- You can also download Media Go from the following website.
  http://mediago.sony.com/enu/features
- To learn more about how to use the Media Go application, see the help section of the Media Go application.

Using infrared communication

You can send/receive data of contacts, photos or videos taken by the camera to/from terminals etc. supporting infrared communication function.

- The communication range for infrared communication is 20 cm or less. Keep the devices pointing at the infrared data port each other, and do not move them until data exchange completes.
- If the infrared data port is soiled, clean the data port with a dry soft cloth to prevent from scratching. Performing infrared communication with the data port soiled or scratched may cause communication failure.
- Infrared communication may not be performed in areas exposed to direct sunlight, directly under fluorescent lights or near infrared devices.
- Depending on the terminal of the other party, it may be difficult to exchange data.



❖Information

- Do not cover the infrared data port with the fingers, etc. while performing infrared communication.
- Infrared communication for the terminal conforms to IrMC version 1.1. However, some data cannot be sent or received even if the receiver's phone conforms IrMC version 1.1.
- Authentication password and docomo apps password may be required while sending or receiving infrared data. Authentication password is a 4-digit number fixed up between you and other party in advance. The same number string must be entered by the sender and receiver. For the docomo apps password, see "docomo apps password" (P.139).
- If the terminal receives a call during infrared communication, data exchange is interrupted and the incoming call screen appears.
- If the set alarm time comes during infrared communication, data exchange is interrupted and the alarm starts to sound.
- is displayed in the status bar during infrared communication.
- You can send and receive Phonebook entries, My profile, name card, sp-mode mail, Schedule & memo, still images (.jpeg, .png, .gif, .bmp), videos (.mp4, .3gp) and ToruCa. It may take a time to exchange data depending on the data amount or device of other party.
- Some data, such as data with copyright protection, etc., cannot be played back on other devices.
- Received data cannot be played back or saved depending on the sender's device, data type or data amount.
- Received images and videos are saved in the internal storage and other data is saved in Phone memory.

Sending data via infrared communication

Use the "Infrared" application to send all data of "Phonebook", "sp-mode mail" or "Schedule&Memo". You can also send data one by one or send a still image or a video using the sharing menu of applications such as "docomo phonebook", "Album".

■ Sending with "Infrared" communication application

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Infrared].

2 Tap [Send all].

3 Tap [Phonebook]/[sp-mode mail]/[Schedule&Memo].

- When you tap [sp-mode mail], select from "Inbox"/"Sent"/"Unsent".

4 Tap [Start].

5 Enter docomo apps password and tap [OK].

6 Enter the same authentication password as that of the recipient and tap [OK]▶[OK]▶[OK].

■ Sending with sharing menu of function

1 Select "Infrared" from the sharing menu of each application.

❖Information

- My profile (excluding name card) can be sent using infrared communication widget. From the Home screen, tap of (infrared communication widget) and follow the onscreen instructions.
- For instructions on sending from the "docomo phonebook" application, see "Sending phonebook entries via infrared communication" (P.98).
- For sending from "Album", see "Sharing image files" (P.206).
- You cannot send two or more items of My profile, name card, still image, video or ToruCa at a time.

Receiving data via infrared communication

■ Receiving 1 item

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Infrared].

2 Tap [Receive]▶[OK].

3 When receiving is complete, tap [OK]▶[OK].

■ Receiving all items

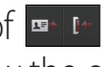
1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Infrared].

2 Tap [Receive all].

3 Enter docomo apps password and tap [OK].

4 Enter the same authentication password as that of the sender and tap [OK]▶[OK]▶[OK]▶[OK].

❖Information

- 1 item of data can be received using infrared communication widget. From the Home screen, tap of  (infrared communication widget) and follow the onscreen instructions.
- When Phonebook, sp-mode mail and Schedule&Memo are received, data on the terminal is deleted before saved.
- You cannot receive two or more videos at a time.

- You may not save received data if the phone memory is full.
- A file name may be changed when saving. A file named with 127 characters or more (Unicode) may not be saved properly.

Using Bluetooth function

The Bluetooth function creates a wireless connection to other Bluetooth devices, for example, handsfree devices. A range within 10 meters, with no solid objects in between, is recommended. You must turn on the Bluetooth function to communicate with Bluetooth devices. You may also have to make pair setting for the terminal and Bluetooth device.

❖Information

- By default, Bluetooth function is off. If you turn Bluetooth on and then turn off the terminal, Bluetooth function turns off. When you turn on the terminal again, Bluetooth function turns on automatically.
- When you do not use Bluetooth function, turn it off to save the battery.

Reception interference caused by wireless LAN devices

The terminal's Bluetooth function and wireless LAN devices use the same frequency band (2.4GHz). If you use the terminal near a wireless LAN device, reception interference may occur or the communications speed may lower. Also, you may hear noise or have a connection problem. In these cases, do the following:

- Keep the Bluetooth device 10 meters or more away from a wireless LAN device.
- Within 10 meters, turn off either the Bluetooth device or the wireless LAN device.

* The terminal does not communicate wirelessly with all types of Bluetooth devices. Bluetooth DUN is not supported.

Making the terminal detectable with the Bluetooth function on

1 **From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Settings].**

2 **Tap in Bluetooth or drag it right.**
- appears on the status bar and Bluetooth function turns on.

3 **Tap [Bluetooth].**

4 **Tap [Xperia AX].**
- The terminal becomes detectable by other Bluetooth devices for 2 minutes.

Entering the terminal name

You can name the terminal. The name appears on Bluetooth devices when you use the Bluetooth function.

1 **Make sure that the Bluetooth function is on.**

2 **From the Home screen, tap and tap [Settings]▶[Bluetooth].**

3 **Tap and tap [Rename phone].**

4 **Enter a name and tap [Rename].**

Making pair setting for the terminal and Bluetooth device

By making pair setting for the terminal and another Bluetooth device, you can use the device such as Bluetooth handsfree headset etc. connecting to the terminal to make and receive calls.

Once you have made pair setting for the terminal and a Bluetooth device, the setting is saved. When making pair setting for the terminal and a Bluetooth device, you may need to enter a passkey (PIN). The terminal automatically tries the generic passkey "0000". If this passkey does not work, see the documentation of your Bluetooth device. You do not need to re-enter the passkey the next time you connect to a paired Bluetooth device already set.

You cannot pair the terminal with two Bluetooth headsets. However, you can pair the terminal with two or more Bluetooth devices of different profiles. The terminal supports the Bluetooth profiles of HFP, HSP, OPP, SPP, HID, A2DP, AVRCP, PBAP, PAN, HDP, PXP and DID.

1 **Make sure that the Bluetooth function is on.**

2 From the Home screen, tap and tap [Settings]▶[Bluetooth].

3 Tap [Search for devices].
- A list of detected Bluetooth devices appears.

4 Tap a Bluetooth device name to pair with the terminal.

5 Check a passkey on the "Bluetooth pairing request" screen, then tap [Pair].
- You can use the Bluetooth device that has been paired.
- Some Bluetooth devices make connections continuously after making pair setting.
- Authentication passcode may be required on the "Bluetooth pairing request" screen.

❖Information
- Make sure that the Bluetooth function and Bluetooth detection function of the target device are on.
- When you make pair setting with the Bluetooth device supporting Secure Simple Pairing (SSP) function, a passkey appears on the screen. Check the passkey and make the pair setting.

Connecting the terminal with Bluetooth device

1 Make sure that the Bluetooth function is on.

2 From the Home screen, tap and tap [Settings]▶[Bluetooth].

3 Tap [Search for devices].
- A list of detected Bluetooth devices appears.
- Pair Bluetooth devices as required.

4 Tap the name of Bluetooth device you want to connect.
- While connecting to a device, appears in the status bar and the connection status appears under the device name.

❖Information
- Tap on the name of connected Bluetooth device to check the status of that Bluetooth device or change the settings.

Deactivating the connection of a Bluetooth device

1 From the Home screen, tap and tap [Settings]▶[Bluetooth].

2 Tap the connected Bluetooth device name.

3 Tap [OK].
- To reconnect, tap the device name.

Canceling the pair setting of a Bluetooth device

1 From the Home screen, tap and tap [Settings]▶[Bluetooth].

2 Tap in a Bluetooth device name to unpair and tap [Unpair].
- Connection disconnects and the pair setting is canceled.

Sending/receiving data using Bluetooth function

Turn the Bluetooth function on before pairing with the other party's Bluetooth device.

Receiving data via Bluetooth function

1 Send data from a Bluetooth device.
- appears on the status bar.

2 Drag the status bar downwards and tap [Bluetooth share: Incoming file]▶[Accept].

Sending data via Bluetooth function

1 Select "Bluetooth" from the sharing menu of each application.

2 Tap the other party's Bluetooth device.
- When sending is complete, a message indicating that the data is sent appears.

❖Information
- For instructions on sending from the "docomo phonebook" application, see "Sending phonebook via Bluetooth/Email/Gmail" (P.99).
- For instructions on sending from "Album", see "Sharing image files" (P.206).

Sharing files with DLNA devices

Using Wi-Fi function, you can share media files with other client (DLNA : Digital Living Network Alliance) devices.
Set Wi-Fi connection (P.119) with another client device.

Setting Media server

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Settings]▶[More...].

2 Tap [Media server settings].
- Media server settings screen appears. You can set the following items.

SO-01E Change server name	Rename the terminal (server) displayed on a client device.
Share content	Set to connect from a client device to the terminal via Wi-Fi.
PENDING DEVICES	Manage client devices waiting access permissions.
REGISTERED DEVICES	Manage client device registered to the terminal.

❖Information
- On the Media server settings screen, tap and [Wi-Fi settings] to set Wi-Fi connection.

Playing media files in the DLNA device with the terminal

Set Wi-Fi connection with a DLNA device to allow access from the terminal in advance.

1 On the Media server settings screen, tap of "Share content" or drag it right.
- "Media server turned on" appears in the status bar.

2 Tap .
- A home screen appears.

3 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Album]/[Movies].

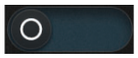
4 Tap [Online]/[Devices].

5 Select a device name to connect, and select a folder.

6 Tap a media file to play it.

Playing a media file in the terminal with a DLNA device

Connect the terminal to a DLNA device via Wi-Fi in advance.

1 **On the Media server settings screen, tap  of "Share content" or drag it right.**
- "Media server turned on" appears in the status bar.

2 **Tap .**
- A home screen appears.

3 **From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Album]/[Movies].**

4 **Tap a tile you want to play.**

5 **Tap and [Throw].**
- "Throw" screen appears.

6 **Tap a device displayed on the "Throw" screen.**
- The file is played by a DLNA device.

dmenu

In dmenu, you can easily access sites recommended by DOCOMO or convenient applications.

Opening dmenu

1 From the Home screen, tap [dmenu].

- Browser activates to display "dmenu".

❖Information

- To use dmenu, Internet connection by packet communication (LTE/3G/GPRS) or Wi-Fi is required.
- For connecting dmenu and downloading applications introduced in dmenu, packet communication charge is applied separately. Some applications automatically perform packet communications.
- Applications introduced by dmenu may include charged ones.

dmarket

You can obtain useful and interesting contents which meet your needs at dmarket.

Opening dmarket

1 From the Home screen, tap [dmarket].

- When you activate for the first time, "dマーケットソフトウェア使用許諾契約書(License Agreement)" appears. Mark "Agree" checkbox and tap [Start use].

❖Information

- For details on dmarket, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

Play Store

With Google Play, you can directly access useful applications or fun games which you can download and install on the terminal. And you can send feedback and comments about an application, or report objectionable application or incompatible application with the terminal as an inappropriate content.

- To use Google Play, you need to set Google account (P.139).
- Some applications and games are free of charge, and the others are paid. On the applications list of Google Play, distinction between free and paid is clearly specified. For details on purchasing, returning and refunding of paid applications, see "Help" (P.169).

Installing applications

1 From the Home screen, tap [Play Store].

- When you activate for the first time, Agreement screen for the terms of service appears. Tap [Accept] to start using.

2 Search application and tap application you want to install.

- Check the displayed contents carefully and follow the onscreen instructions.
- Be careful especially about applications which access many functions or large amount of data. If you perform download operation, you are responsible for the consequences of using this application on the terminal.

❖Information

- Be sure to check the security of application, then install it at your own risk. The terminal may be infected with a virus and the data may be damaged.
- NTT DOCOMO is not liable for malfunctions, if any, caused by the application you installed. In such case, the repair is charged even during the warranty period.
- NTT DOCOMO is not liable for any disadvantage brought to you or any third party due to an application you installed.
- Some applications automatically perform packet communications. Packet communication is kept active unless you disconnect it or the time-out is occurred. To disconnect packet communications manually, drag the status bar downward, tap .
- Some applications may be updated automatically.

Deleting application

1 **From the Home screen, tap [Play Store].**

2 **Tap ⋮ and [My Apps].**

3 **Tap the applications you want to delete, then tap [Uninstall]▶[OK].**

- When you uninstall charged applications, a screen for refund may appear. For details, refer to "Help" (P.169).

Help

When you need help or have any questions about Google Play, display the Google Play screen, then tap ⋮ and tap [Help] to open Google Play help page.

Osaifu-Keitai

This function allows you to use "おサイフケータイ対応サービス (Osaifu-Keitai compatible service)" by which you can pay money or use coupon, etc. or "かざしてリンク対応サービス (Kazashite-Link compatible service)" by which you can access information by holding the terminal over a home electric appliances or smart poster.

Electronic money or point values can be saved in the IC card or the docomo mini UIM card.

You can check credit, payment or points of electronic money by using the network. In addition, you can lock your Osaifu-Keitai to provide against loss or theft, and you can use Osaifu-Keitai with safe.

For details on Osaifu-Keitai, refer to "ご利用ガイドブック (spモード編) (Mobile Phone User's Guide [sp-mode]) (in Japanese only)".

iC transfer service

The iC transfer service is a service which helps you transfer all data in the IC card for Osaifu-Keitai to your new Osaifu-Keitai when you change Osaifu-Keitai for changing of the model or repair. Data in the docomo mini UIM card remains the same after using the iC transfer service.

Visit a sales outlet such as docomo Shop to use the iC transfer service.

For details on iC transfer service, refer to "ご利用ガイドブック (spモード編) (Mobile Phone User's Guide [sp-mode]) (in Japanese only)".

Precautions on using the Osaifu-Keitai compatible terminal

- The data in the IC card*1 or the docomo mini UIM card*2 may be lost or modified because of the malfunction of the terminal (When we take your terminal for repair etc., as we cannot take it with data remained, you are required to erase the data by yourself). For support such as reissuance, restoration, temporary preservation or transfer of data, contact Osaifu-Keitai compatible service providers. For important data, be sure to use a service with backup service.
- If the data in the IC card or the docomo mini UIM card is lost, modified or damaged by any means related to Osaifu-Keitai compatible service such as malfunction or model change, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of data.
- If the terminal is stolen or misplaced, immediately contact Osaifu-Keitai compatible service provider for an advice.
- If you use a docomo mini UIM card (red), you cannot use some Osaifu-Keitai compatible services such as international use. Bring it to a docomo Shop to replace in February, 2013 (scheduled) or later.

  For using, software update related to Osaifu-Keitai (product update of the terminal) is required. For details on software update, see "Updating software" (P.250).

  You can use "Osaifu-Keitai compatible services" and "Kazashite-Link compatible service", which can be saved in the IC card.

*1 Data saved in the IC card built in the Osaifu-Keitai compatible terminal (including electronic money or point values)

*2 Data saved in the docomo mini UIM card (including electronic money or point values, and excluding phonebook data and SMS data)

Using "おサイフケータイ対応サービス (Osaifu-Keitai compatible service)"

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Osaifu-Keitai].

2 Select a service you want to use from a service list.

- Download an application compatible with service site or service.
- You can exchange data with an IC card reader only by holding mark over the card reader.

❖Information

- If you do not make the initial setting for Osaifu-Keitai in the initial setting for DOCOMO services (P.40), the initial setting screen appears in Step 1. Follow the onscreen instructions.
- You can scan and write data to or from an IC card reader without activating Osaifu-Keitai compatible application.
- The function is available even if the terminal is off, but it is not available when the battery pack is not attached. Even if the battery pack is attached, the function may not be available when you leave the terminal off for a long time or the battery level is low, etc.
- You can use Osaifu-Keitai compatible service even when the PIN code cannot be unlocked or PIN locked.
- Note that when you do not subscribe sp-mode, some functions of Osaifu-Keitai compatible service may not be available.

Using "かざしてリンク対応サービス (Kazashite-Link compatible service)"

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Settings]▶[More...].

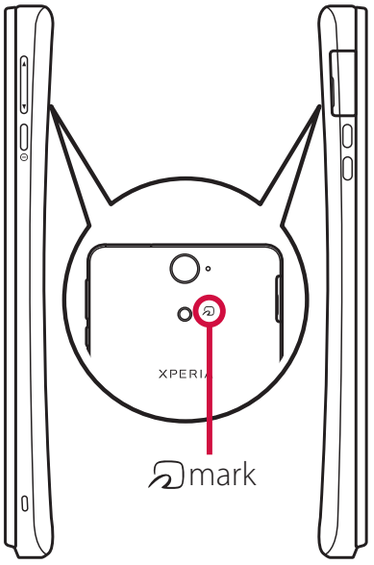
2 [NFC/Osaifu-Keitai settings]▶[Reader/Writer, P2P]▶[OK].

- "Reader/Writer, P2P" and "Android Beam" are marked.
- Reader/Writer, P2P function is enabled, and appears in the status bar.

3 Hold the mark over a device with the NFC module or a smart poster.

Sending/Receiving data by one-touch function

One-touch function is an original function developed by Sony based on NFC technology. You can send/receive data to/from a device with NFC such as a mobile phone. If you use the one-touch function with a Sony product with NFC, simple operations allow you to send or receive images, music, photos or videos taken with the terminal.



- Set Reader/Writer, P2P function ON in advance (P.172).
- Place 2 mobile phones in parallel position and point marks to each other. Do not move them until sending/receiving is complete.
- Available operations to send/receive or available data to send/receive depends on the compatible applications. Follow the onscreen instructions.
- Even if marks are pointed to each other, sending/receiving may be failed. If failed, perform operations of sending/receiving again.
- When pointing marks to each other slowly, sending/receiving may be failed.
- The terminal does not communicate with all NFC devices.

Set Reader/Writer, P2P function to ON

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Settings]▶[More...].

2 [NFC/Osaifu-Keitai settings]▶[Reader/Writer, P2P]▶[OK].

- "Reader/Writer, P2P" and "Android Beam" are marked.
- Reader/Writer, P2P function is enabled, and appears in the status bar.

❖Information

- Alternatively, from the Home screen, use "NFC Quick Launch" to enable/disable Reader/Writer, P2P function.

Sending data

1 Make sure that the Reader/Writer, P2P function is on.

2 Display data to send on the screen.

3 Face the marks each other with the receiving terminal.

- The displayed screen becomes small, and "Touch to beam" appears.

4 Tap the screen that has become small.

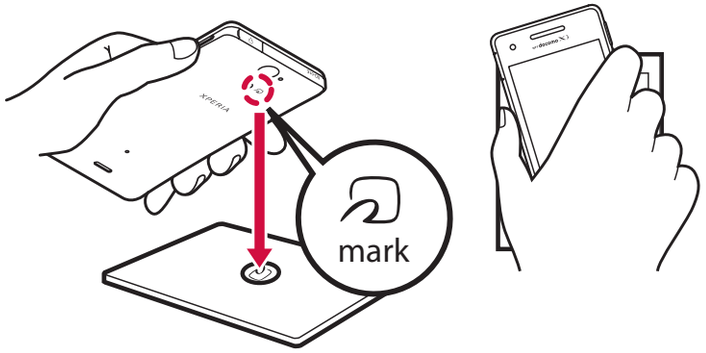
Receiving data

1 Make sure that the Reader/Writer, P2P function is on.

2 Face the mark marks each other with the sending terminal.

- When data is received, an application that supports the data opens. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Notes on holding the mark over the other device such as a reader or device with the NFC module



- When holding mark over the other device, make sure not to hit the terminal strongly.
- Hold the mark over parallel to the center of the other device.
- When holding mark over the other device, move it closer slowly.
- If mark is not recognized even when holding over the device, try lifting the terminal slightly, or moving the terminal back, forth and around.
- If there are metal objects between mark and the other device, scanning may be failed. And note that a sticker put on nearby the mark may affect communication performance.

Locking Osaifu-Keitai function

Use "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock" settings to restrict the use of Osaifu-Keitai function and related services.

- NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is different from screen lock for the terminal, SIM card lock.

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Settings]▶[More...].

2 Tap [NFC/Osaifu-Keitai settings]▶[NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock].

3 Enter a password, then tap [Next].

- Osaifu-Keitai function is locked, and or is displayed in the status bar.
- When using "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock" for the first time, set password, secret question and answer. Follow the onscreen instructions.

❖Information

- Note that you cannot cancel "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock", if the battery runs out while "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock" is set. Be careful about remaining battery level. If you cancel "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock", charge the terminal before canceling.
- You need to unlock to use Osaifu-Keitai menu while "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock" is set.
- "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock" password is not be deleted even if you reset the terminal.
- If you forget the password for "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock", tap ⋮ in the "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai settings" screen and tap [Forget password?], then answer the secret question that you set when setting the password. Note that you cannot cancel "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock" if you forget both the password and secret question.
- When unlocking "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock", insert the same docomo mini UIM card as the one inserted when "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock" was set, then unlock.

iDアプリ (iD application)

"iD" is a convenient electronic money by credit clearance scheme. You can enjoy shopping simply and conveniently only by holding Osaifu-Keitai with credit information set or the iD-compatible card over the IC card reader in stores. Because up to 2 types of credit information can be registered in Osaifu-Keitai, you can use them according to the benefits, etc. It also supports cashing, depending on the card issuer.

- To use iD with Osaifu-Keitai, subscribing to a card issuer that supports iD, settings for iD application are required.
- The charges required for iD service (including the annual charge) vary by card issuer.
- For using the application, a packet communication charge is applied.
- A packet communication fee for oversea use differs from the one in Japan.
- For details on iD, refer to iD website. http://id-credit.com/ (In Japanese only)

ToruCa

ToruCa is an electronic card that can be obtained to mobile phones. It can be obtained from the IC card reader or site as store information, coupon ticket, etc. Obtained ToruCa is saved to the "ToruCa" application. Use the "ToruCa" application to display, search or update.

For details on ToruCa, refer to "ご利用ガイドブック (spモード編) (Mobile Phone User's Guide [sp-mode]) (in Japanese only)".

❖Information

- For obtaining, displaying or updating ToruCa, a packet communication charge may be applied.
- Some ToruCa provided to i-mode terminal may not be obtained/displayed/updated.

- Depending on the settings of IP (Information Provider), the following functions may not be available.
  - Obtaining/Updating from the IC card reader, sharing ToruCa, moving to microSD card, copying/displaying map
- Some ToruCa which can be displayed in a map from ToruCa (details) may not be displayed in a map from the ToruCa list depending on the IP settings.
- While "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock" is set, you cannot obtain ToruCa with an IC card reader.
- If you mark 重複チェック (Duplication check), obtaining the same ToruCa redundantly is not available. To obtain the same ToruCa redundantly, unmark 重複チェック (Duplication check).
- When you send ToruCa attaching to email, it is sent in the condition before obtaining ToruCa (details).
- Depending on email application, ToruCa received via the emails may not be saved.
- Depending on browser, ToruCa cannot be obtained.
- When ToruCa is moved/copied to the microSD card, it is moved/copied in the condition before obtaining ToruCa (details).
- You may not be able to obtain ToruCa with an IC card reader, if you do not make initial setting for Osaifu-Keitai.

■ About NFC

NFC is an abbreviation for Near Field Communication and a short range wireless communication method of international standard defined by ISO (International Organization for Standardization). You can use a contactless IC card function, Reader/Writer function (R/W), Peer-to-Peer communications function (P2P), etc.

1Seg

1Seg is a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service that allows mobile devices to receive broadcasted data along with images and sounds. You can also acquire detailed program information, participate in quiz programs, enjoy TV shopping, etc.
For details on "1Seg" service, refer to the following website.
The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting
http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/

Using 1Seg

1Seg is a service provided by TV broadcasting enterprises (stations), etc. A communication fee for receiving video picture and sound is not required. Contact NHK for details on your NHK viewing fees.
There are 2 types of information displayed in the data broadcasting area: "Data broadcasting" and "Data broadcasting site". "Data broadcasting" is displayed using airwave along with images and sounds; while "Data broadcasting site" is displayed by connecting to a site provided by TV broadcasting enterprises (stations), etc., using information of data broadcasting.

For viewing "Data broadcasting site", etc., packet communication fees are charged.

- Some sites require information fees.

Airwaves

1Seg is one of the broadcast services and a different type of radio waves (airwaves) from that of FOMA service is received. Therefore, regardless of whether you are in or out of Xi service or FOMA service area, it cannot be received where airwaves do not reach or during broadcasting interruptions.
Also, even in a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service area, reception condition may be poor or reception may be unavailable in the following places:

- A place far from the tower that the airwaves are sent from
- Mountain-ringed regions or a place between buildings where airwaves are interrupted by geography or buildings
- Tunnel, underground or far back from a building where airwaves are weak or do not reach

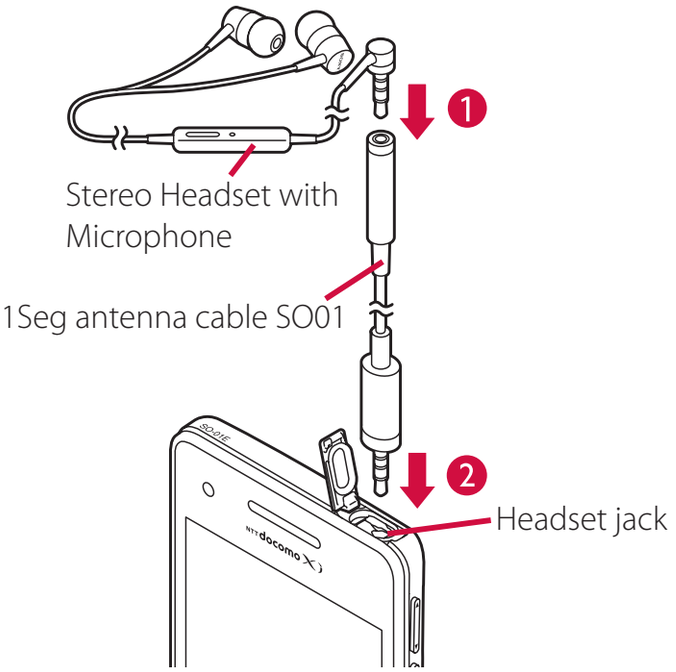
Using 1Seg antenna cable

To watch 1Seg program on the terminal, use supplied 1Seg antenna cable SO01.
When emitting the sound of 1Seg from the speaker, connect the 1Seg antenna cable SO01 only to the terminal.

When emitting the sound of 1Seg from the Stereo Headset with Microphone (Sample), connect the Stereo Headset with Microphone to the 1Seg antenna cable SO01, then connect to the terminal.

1 Connect the plug of Stereo Headset with Microphone to headset jack of the 1Seg antenna cable SO01 (❶).

2 Connect the plug of the 1Seg antenna cable SO01 to the headset jack of the terminal (❷).



❖Information

- While emitting the sound of 1Seg with the 1Seg antenna cable SO01 connected alone, connecting the Stereo Headset with Microphone does not switch the sound output to the Stereo Headset with Microphone. To emit sound with the Stereo Headset with Microphone, remove the 1Seg antenna cable SO01 once and connect the Stereo Headset with Microphone to the 1Seg antenna cable SO01, then connect to the terminal.
- While emitting the sound of 1Seg with the Stereo Headset with Microphone and the 1Seg antenna cable SO01 connected, removing the Stereo Headset with Microphone from the 1Seg antenna cable SO01 does not switch the sound output to the speaker. To hear sound via speaker, remove the 1Seg antenna cable SO01 then connect the 1Seg antenna cable SO01 alone to the terminal.

Initial settings for 1Seg

Make channel setting when you use 1Seg for the first time. After channel setting is done, 1Seg programs can be watched.

1 From the Home screen, tap and tap [1Seg].

2 Tap [Watch].

- If [More] is tapped, Operation guide appears.

3 Tap [Setting]▶[Channel setting].

4 Tap [Current area].

- Available channels are searched.

5 Tap entry box, enter a title name and tap [OK].

- To return the 1Seg menu, tap .

❖Information

- Alternatively, tap [Select area] in Step 4 then select area to make channel setting.

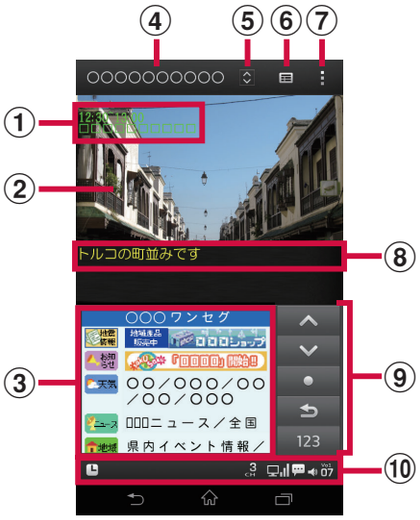
Watching 1Seg program

1 From the Home screen, tap and tap [1Seg].

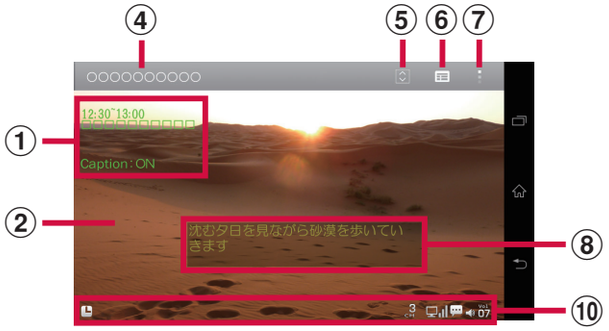
2 Tap [Watch].

- 1Seg watching screen appears. Tap the image to temporarily view program information such as program name.

1Seg screen



1Seg watching screen (with data broadcasting)



1Seg watching screen (full screen)

① Program information
② Image
③ Data broadcasting : Display data broadcasting content.
④ Broadcasting station
⑤ Remote controller : Display numeric keys to switch channels and keys for searching stations.
⑥ Program guide : Display program guide.
⑦ View optional menu
⑧ Subtitle
⑨ Remote controller for data broadcasting : Display operation keys for data broadcasting such as Move focus, Select focus, Back, Show numeric keys, etc.
⑩ 1Seg status bar : Display icons for off timer, channel, reception level, subtitle, muting, volume, etc.

❖Information

- While watching 1Seg, press [◁ ▷] to adjust volume.
- You can watch 1Seg turning the terminal sideways. If the screen orientation does not change automatically when you turn the terminal sideways, drag the status bar downward and tap .
- For data broadcasting, screen display supports portrait only.
- Flick the 1Seg watching screen left and right to select the previous or next channel you are currently watching.
- You cannot exit 1Seg even if you tap [⌂] to return to the Home screen. If 1Seg remains activated, the battery may be consumed quickly. To exit 1Seg, tap [⮌] while watching 1Seg.
- It may take a time to acquire image data or broadcasted data when you activate 1Seg or change channels due to characteristic of digital broadcasting.
- According to the airwave condition, image or sound may be interrupted or stopped.

- If the terminal receives a call while watching 1Seg, 1Seg is interrupted and resumes after the call ends.

Watching data broadcasting

For data broadcasting, you can view various information by following the onscreen instructions.

❖Information

- To watch data broadcasting, call charge or packet communication charge is not required. If you use additional services of data broadcasting, etc. via packet communication, packet communication fees are charged.

Setting 1Seg

You can set 1Seg watching screen, data broadcasting and initialize.

Using optional menu

You can record 1Seg, switch caption display, etc.

1 On the 1Seg watching screen (P.178), tap ⋮.

Start recording	Start/Stop recording (P.182). "Stop recording" is displayed during recording.
Mute	Mute sound. "Unmute" is displayed during mute mode.
Caption setting	Switch caption display to on or off.
Viewing setting	Set 1Seg viewing (P.180).
TVlink	Display a TV link list screen (P.182).
1Seg menu	Go back to the 1Seg menu.

Setting 1Seg viewing

1 On the 1Seg watching screen (P.178), tap ⋮ then tap [Viewing setting].

Channel info	Display information for available channels.
Program info	Display information for received programs.
Channel list	Registered areas (broadcasting service area) are listed as a channel list.
Add to channel list	Add a channel from 1Seg watching screen.
Reservation	Reserve viewing or recording or display reservation results.
Switch display	Switch display between Video+DataBC and Data broadcasting.
Off timer	Make a timer setting to end 1Seg watching.
Main/sub sound	Set main/sub sound.
Sound switch	Set to switch sound.
Volume setting	Adjust the volume level.
Sound effect setting	Switch sound effect of data broadcasting between on and off.
Back to data BC	Display data broadcasting.
Tune service	You can select a sub-channel when several programs (services) are broadcasted for separated sub-channels in a channel.

Storing/Changing broadcasting service areas

Available channels vary depending on the area (broadcasting service area) you are using in.

■ Storing broadcasting service areas

1 From the Home screen, tap ⊞ and tap [1Seg].

2 Tap [Setting]▶[Channel setting].

3 Tap [Current area].

- Available channels are searched.

4 Tap entry box, enter a title name and tap [OK].

❖Information

- Alternatively, tap [Select area] in Step 3 then select area to make channel setting.

■ Changing broadcasting service areas

1 From the Home screen, tap ⊞ and tap [1Seg].

2 Tap [Setting]▶[Channel list] to select a registered channel list.

- Broadcasting service area is changed.

❖Information

- On the channel list screen, touch and hold registered area etc. to display a menu so that you can display channel information, set channels, edit titles, etc.

Changing numbers for TV remote

Change TV remote number assigned to each broadcasting station. Each broadcasting station can be called up via the corresponding TV remote number.

1 **From the Home screen, tap and tap [1Seg].**

2 **Tap [Setting]▶[Channel list] and tap a channel list to change.**

3 **Touch and hold channel information.**

4 **Tap [Remote control No.] and tap a broadcasting station to change.**

5 **Tap a remote control number to set the selected broadcasting station for.**

- If you select a remote control number set for another broadcasting station, the previously set broadcasting station is switched to the broadcasting station that is set in Step 4.

6 **Tap and [YES].**

Initializing settings

You can initialize the channel setting and 1Seg setting.

1 **From the Home screen, tap and tap [1Seg].**

2 **Tap [Setting]▶[Reset] to select an item to initialize.**

3 **Tap [YES].**

Using TVlinks

For some data broadcasting programs, link information to related websites (TVlink) is displayed. Save TVlinks to connect to related websites later.

Saving TVlinks

1 **On the 1Seg watching screen (with data broadcasting) (P.178), select TVlink to store.**

- After this step, follow the onscreen instructions.

Display TVlinks

1 On the 1Seg watching screen (P.178), tap ⋮.

2 Tap [TVlink].
- A TV link list screen appears.

3 Select a TVlink.
- When selecting a link content or HTML content, tap [Yes].

❖Information
- Some TVlinks have period of validity. Out of date TVlinks are no longer available.

Viewing/Deleting details of TVlink

1 On the 1Seg watching screen (P.178), tap ⋮.

2 Tap [TVlink] and tap ⋮.

Check the number of registration	Check the number of stored TVlinks.
Delete all	Delete all stored TVlinks.
Delete selected	Delete several stored TVlinks. Mark a TVlink to delete and tap ⋮, tap [Delete data?]▶[YES].

❖Information
- On the TVlink list screen, touch and hold a TVlink to display menus for displaying detailed information, etc.

Reservation of recording/ viewing TV program

Reserve recording/viewing TV program.

1 From the Home screen, tap ⊞ and tap [1Seg].

2 Tap [Reservation]▶"Recording" tab/"Watching" tab.

3 Tap ⋮ and [New].

4 Tap [Channel name] to select a channel.

5 Set Program name, Start date/ time, etc. and tap [Done].
- When setting Recording reservation, set End time.

Recording 1Seg

Record images, sound, captions or data broadcasting while displaying.

1 On the 1Seg watching screen (P.178), tap ⋮ then tap [Start recording].

2 On the 1Seg watching screen (P.178), tap ⋮ then tap [Stop recording]▶[YES].

❖**Information**

- Maximum recorded data file size is 4GB, and maximum continuous recordable time is approximately 24 hours.
  Items can be saved up to 99.
- When you use the microSD card from another application during recording, recording may be failed.

Play a recorded program.

1 From the Home screen, tap and tap [1Seg].

2 Tap [Recording data] and a program to play.

Using program guide

1 From the Home screen, tap and tap [1Seg].

2 Tap [Program guide].

- After this step, follow the onscreen instructions.

FM radio

You can listen to the FM radio with the terminal. Tuning can be made automatically or manually, and you can register your favorite channels to Favorites. To use FM radio, use a handsfree device such as Stereo Headset with Microphone (Sample), etc. or a headphone. They work as antenna.

Searching and registering channels

1 Connect Stereo Headset with Microphone to the terminal.

- For connection of Stereo Headset with Microphone, see "Using Stereo Headset with Microphone" (P.204).

2 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [FM radio].

- FM radio screen appears and selecting channel starts automatically. The search ends when radio waves are received.

3 Tap / to select channel.

- You can select channel by flicking the screen left and right.

4 Tap , then tap [+ Add XX.X to favorites].

5 Tap entry box, enter a name and tap [Save].

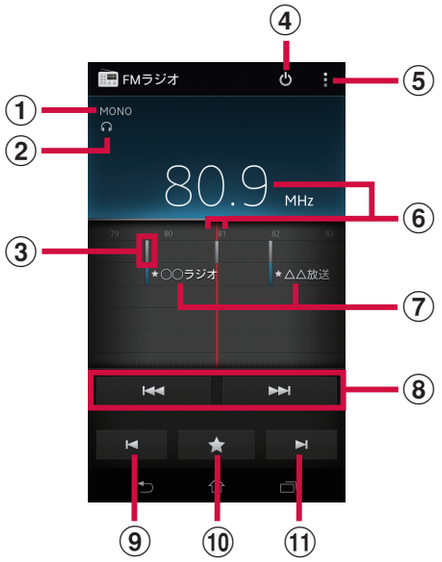
- The frequency bands of selected channels are registered to Favorites.

6 To stop the FM radio, tap .

❖Information

- Alternatively, on the FM radio screen, tap and [Search for channels] to search.
- You can return to the Home screen to perform another operation while listening to FM radio in the background. To return to the FM radio screen, from the Home screen, tap then tap [FM radio], or drag the status bar downward and tap [FM radio].
- When the docomo mini UIM card is not inserted, the frequency band range is 87.5MHz - 108.0MHz. You cannot listen to the FM radio programs in Japan.
- While FM radio is on, "Recorder" of small apps (P.83) is not available.

FM radio screen



① Monaural/stereo effect
② Play in speaker/Play in handsfree
③ Channel point displayed in a good radio wave condition
④ On/Off of FM radio
⑤ View optional menu
⑥ Broadcasting station now listening
⑦ Channel assigned to favorite
⑧ Search channels automatically
⑨ Move left to select next favorite
⑩ Favorites saving/editing/tuning
⑪ Move right to select next favorite

Switching the speaker and handsfree device

1 On the FM radio screen, tap .

2 Tap [Play in speaker]/[Play in headphones].

- The sound output is switched to the speaker/handsfree device.

Camera

You can shoot still pictures and videos by tapping the shutter icon or screen. You can hold the camera horizontally or vertically to shoot still pictures (when shooting with Sweep Panorama, always hold the camera horizontally). For recording videos, screen display supports landscape only. Still pictures and videos are saved automatically in the internal storage or a microSD card.

Before using the camera

- All pictures or videos that you capture on the terminal are stored into the internal storage or a microSD card. When saving to a microSD card, insert a microSD card before using the camera. You cannot take a photo while the terminal is reading/writing data, for example transferring a file from Media Go.
- If you use microSD card with an i-mode compatible terminal, photos and videos shot by the terminal cannot be shown.
- Avoid copyright infringements when you handle photos, videos, or sound recorded using the terminal, e.g. copy/edit. In addition, avoid rights infringements of portraits by using these photos without consent, altering them or by other means. Note that capturing or recording a stage performance, entertainment or exhibition may be prohibited even if for personal use.

■ About the Copyright and Portrait rights

Objects, such as movies, still images, and sounds, recorded using the terminal are prohibited by the copyright law from use without consent of the copyright holders, unless intended for personal use or any other purpose permitted by law. Also, using or transformation of other person's portrait or name without his or her permission may violate the portrait right. When you present recorded images or sounds in a public place such as on an Internet home page, make sure to be aware of the copyright and portrait right. Note that some performances, shows, and exhibitions may not allow photography, movie shooting, or sound recording even for personal use. Transmission of images related to copyright or beyond the scope provided in the copyright law is not available.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

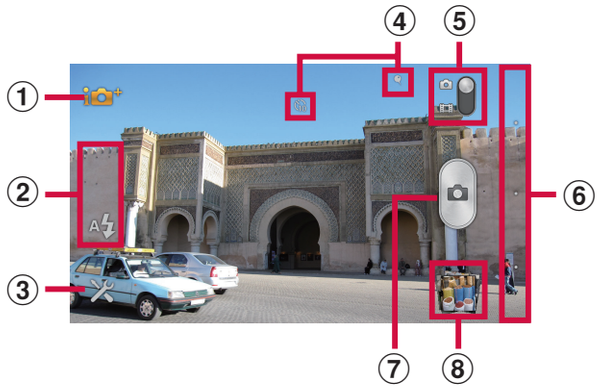
If you cause the public any trouble using the terminal, you may be punished under law or regulations (for example, nuisance prevention ordinance).

Note on Sweep Panorama

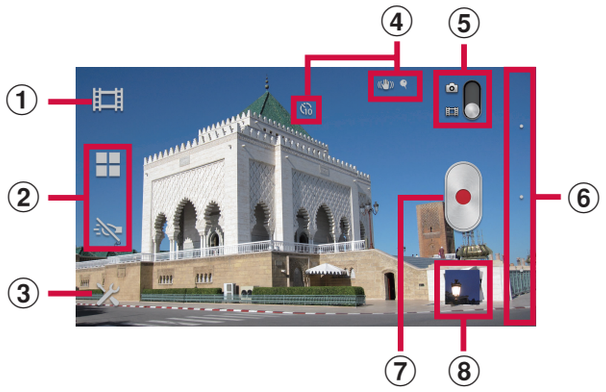
- In the following cases, Sweep Panorama does not work properly.
  - Shooting a moving object
  - Shooting the main object that is too close to the camera
  - Shooting an object with repetition of the same pattern such as a sky, beach, grass, etc.
  - Shooting a big object
  - Shooting an object with constantly changing pattern such as a wave, waterfall, etc.
- If shooting angle does not reach the required value for Sweep Panorama within a certain period of time, the part which was not taken is recorded in gray.
  To avoid this, move the camera faster when shooting.
- Because two or more images are joined together, joints may not recorded smoothly.
- Images may be blurred or may not be taken in a dark scene.
- Under the flickering light source such as a fluorescent light, you may not be able to shoot properly since brightness or color balance of joined image may be unstable.
- If brightness, color balance or focus point of whole image to be taken with Sweep Panorama are extremely different from those of the focused image, image may not be shot properly.
- In the following cases, Sweep Panorama shooting may be interrupted.
  - Moved the camera too fast/too slow
  - Blurred too much
  - Moved the camera in the opposite direction of the shooting

Shooting screen and key operation

Still picture shooting screen



Video recording screen



① Capturing mode icon (P.188)
② Display area of icons showing selected settings
③ Icons showing set items
④ Display area of status icons showing selected settings
⑤ Switch icon for photo/video
⑥ Navigation bar
⑦ Shutter (still picture)
Start/Stop recording (video)
⑧ Recent shooting history
- Touch thumbnail of shooting history on the shooting screen and flick it to the left of the screen (up when in portrait view) to display the last 5 items.
- Tap a thumbnail to open viewing/playback screen for still pictures and videos.
- Touch and hold a thumbnail to display the following icons.
  : View playback screen of photos and videos
  : Share
  : Delete

❖Information

- On the shooting screen, pinch-in/out or press [◁ ▷] to zoom in/out. When capturing mode (P.188) is set to "Front camera", "Sweep Panorama" or "Front video", zoom is not available.
- To end the camera, tap Navigation bar, then tap [⮌].

Changing shooting mode

1 From the Home screen, tap and [Camera].

- The still picture shooting screen (P.187) appears. For recording videos, tap on the photo/video switch icon (P.187) to display the video recording screen (P.187).

2 On the shooting screen, tap the capturing mode icon (P.188), then select capturing mode.

Capturing mode icon

Capturing mode

Superior auto

The camera determines most suitable scene effect. A corresponding scene icon appears when the scene is recognized.
"Soft snap", "Landscape", "Backlight", "Backlight portrait", "Night scene", "Night portrait", "Document", "Macro" or "Low light" is recognized.

Normal

A standard shooting mode.

Front camera

Shoot pictures using the front camera (P.199).

Picture effect

Apply various picture effects to pictures (P.201).

Scene selection

Set programmed scenes (P.189).

Sweep Panorama

Shoot panoramic image with wide angle (P.202).

Video camera

Record videos (P.195).

Front video

Record videos using the front camera (P.199).

Shooting still pictures

Tap the shutter icon ( ) or shooting screen to shoot still pictures. Shot still pictures are automatically saved in the internal storage/ microSD card.

1 From the Home screen, tap and [Camera].

- The still picture shooting screen (P.187) appears.

Tapping the shutter icon ( )

Tap the shutter icon ( ) on the shooting screen.

- To shoot still pictures using auto-focus function, touch and hold the shutter icon ( ) and release your finger when the focus frame turns green and sound beeps. A picture is taken as soon as you release the finger. If the focus frame turns red, auto-focus does not operate correctly.

Tapping the shooting screen

Set "Touch capture", then tap the shooting screen.

- To set "Touch capture", on the shooting screen, tap , then tap [Capturing method]▶[Touch capture].

- To shoot still pictures using auto-focus function, touch and hold the screen and release your finger when the focus frame turns green and sound beeps. A picture is taken as soon as you release the finger. If the focus frame turns red, auto-focus does not operate correctly.

❖Information

- When you connect Stereo Headset with Microphone (Sample), commercially available earphone set or other Bluetooth device, shutter sound may be softer.

Changing the shooting settings

1 From the Home screen, tap and [Camera].

- The still picture shooting screen (P.187) appears.

2 On the shooting screen, tap , then tap item to set.

- Several setting icons are displayed on the shooting screen in advance. The displayed setting icons change depending on the setting conditions.
- When capturing mode (P.188) is set to "Picture effect" or "Sweep Panorama", tap the setting item icon displayed on the shooting screen to change the setting.
- For setting items and icons, see "Still camera setting" (P.189).

3 Tap an option in the selected setting.

- If you change setting options, icons displayed on the shooting screen change to the set items.

❖Information

- To replace setting item icons displayed on the shooting screen, tap on the shooting screen and touch and hold a setting item and drag it to a dotted frame.
- To delete a setting item icon displayed on the shooting screen, touch and hold an icon and drag it to displayed in the center of the screen.
- When capturing mode (P.188) is set to "Picture effect" or "Sweep Panorama", a setting item icon cannot be replaced or deleted.
- or capturing mode icons (P.188) displayed on the shooting screen cannot be moved or deleted.

Still camera setting

Scenes

Use Scenes to quickly set up the camera for various scene conditions.
Use when the capturing mode (P.188) is set to "Scene selection".

Soft snap

Settings are optimized to give brighter and warmer skin tones.

Landscape

Shoot landscape depicting trees with vivid color and focusing on distant objects.

Backlight correction HDR
Correct backlight with the high dynamic range imaging function.

Night portrait
Suitable for shooting persons against the nightscape background. Due to long exposure time, be careful not to shake camera.

Night scene
Shoot a crisp and clear night scene. Due to long exposure time, be careful not to shake camera.

Beach and snow
Reconstruct beach and snowy scene brightly and vividly.

Party
Shoot an indoor picture creating good atmosphere of indoor lighting. Due to long exposure time, be careful not to shake camera.

Sports
To shoot fast-moving object, shorten exposure time to minimize motion blurring.

Document
Use for shooting text or graphics. It allows to capture a clear, bright, and easy to read text.

Resolution
Set the resolution for shooting. An image with a higher resolution requires more memory.
Use when the capturing mode (P.188) is set to "Superior auto"/"Normal"/"Scene selection".

13MP 4:3/ 12MP 4:3
13 or 12 megapixel image size with 4:3 aspect ratio. Suitable for viewing on normal size screen or printing in high resolution.
When you set the capturing mode (P.188) to any of the followings, the resolution is set to 12MP.
- Superior auto
- Normal (when "HDR" is set to "On")
- Scene selection (when "Backlight correction HDR" is set)

9MP 16:9
9 megapixel image size with 16:9 aspect ratio. A high resolution wide-screen format. Suitable for viewing on wide-screen.

5MP 4:3
5 megapixel image size with 4:3 aspect ratio. Suitable for viewing on normal size screen.

2MP16:9
2 megapixel image size with 16:9 aspect ratio. Suitable for viewing on wide-screen.

VGA
VGA format with 4:3 aspect ratio.

Flash

Set the flash to light or not when lighting conditions are poor or in backlight.

Auto

Turn on the flash automatically according to the brightness.

Fill flash

Always turn on the flash regardless of the brightness.

Red-eye reduction

Reduce red-eye effect caused by the flash.

Off

The flash does not turn on.

- Sometimes still picture quality can be better without flash. When you do not turn on the flash, use the self-timer to avoid blurring still picture.

Photo light

Use the photo light to shoot when lighting conditions are poor or in backlight.
Use when the capturing mode (P.188) is set to "Sweep Panorama".

On

The photo light turns on.

Off

The photo light does not turn on.

Self-timer

Shoot when a set time has elapsed after tapping the shutter icon.
Use it to take self-portraits, or group photos where everyone can be in the photo. You can also use the self-timer to avoid camera shake.

On (10 sec.)

Shutter clicks 10 seconds after tapping.

On (2 sec.)

Shutter clicks 2 seconds after tapping.

Off

Shutter clicks immediately after tapping.

Smile Shutter

Shoot faces at the moment they smile (P.200).

Big smile

Shoot when a big smile is detected.

Average smile

Shoot when a smile is detected.

Small smile

Shoot when even a tiny smile is detected.

Off

Cancel smile detection function.

Quick launch

On the screen unlock screen, drag Quick launch icon ( ) to the left to activate the camera (P.199).

Launch and capture

Activate the camera to shoot a photo immediately.

Launch only (still camera)

Activate the camera to display shooting screen.

Launch and record movie

Activate the camera to record a video immediately.

Launch only (movie camera)

Activate the camera to display recording video screen.

Focus mode

Set focus controls.

Use when the capturing mode (P.188) is set to "Normal".

Single autofocus

The camera automatically focuses on the object.

Multi autofocus

The camera automatically focuses on several points on the shooting screen. When the shutter icon is tapped, white focus frames turn to green if focused on.

Face detection

Detect a face to focus (P.200).

Touch focus

Tap an object on the shooting screen. The focus frame moves onto the tapped place.

Exposure value

Adjusting brightness with Exposure value.

Use when the capturing mode (P.188) is set to "Normal".

Exposure value

Drag the bar to adjust the exposure value.

HDR

Set the high dynamic range imaging function.

Use when the capturing mode (P.188) is set to "Normal".

On

Shoot with the high dynamic range imaging function.

Off

Disable the high dynamic range imaging function.

White balance

Adjust the color balance to the light source.

Use when the capturing mode (P.188) is set to "Normal".

Auto

Adjust the color balance automatically to the light source.

Incandescent

Adjust the color balance for lighting like incandescent bulb.

Fluorescent
Adjust the color balance for lighting like fluorescent.

Daylight
Adjust the color balance for a sunny place.

Cloudy
Adjust the color balance for a cloudy sky or shaded area.

ISO
Set ISO sensitivity. Shoot clear picture reducing blur even in a place where lightning is poor.
Use when the capturing mode (P.188) is set to "Normal".

Auto
Set to the appropriate sensitivity from "100" to "1600".

100
Set sensitivity to 100.

200
Set sensitivity to 200.

400
Set sensitivity to 400.

800
Set sensitivity to 800.

1600
Set sensitivity to 1600.

Metering
Measure the brightness on the shooting screen to determine a well-balanced exposure automatically.
Use when the capturing mode (P.188) is set to "Normal".

Center
Put emphasis at the center of the shooting screen and measure photometry at whole view finder to adjust the exposure.

Average
Adjust the exposure based on the brightness of the whole shooting screen.

Spot
Measure photometry only at the center of the shooting screen to adjust the exposure.

Image stabilizer
Compensate for photo blur caused by small movements of the hand when shooting.
Use when the capturing mode (P.188) is set to "Normal".

On
Reduce blur.

Off
The stabilizer is not used.

Geotagging

Tag photos location information (geotag) for the shooting spot. Enable the location information service setting to add Geotag. For details on location information service, see "Location services" (P.216).

On

Geotag (location information) is added to specify the shooting spot of the photo.

Off

Shooting location cannot be viewed on a map.

Capturing method

Set the shooting method.

On-screen button

Tap the shutter icon to shoot.

Touch capture

Tap the shooting screen to shoot.

Shooting direction

Set shooting direction for Sweep Panorama. Use when the capturing mode (P.188) is set to "Sweep Panorama".

Right

Shoot moving the camera from left to right.

Left

Shoot moving the camera from right to left.

Down

Shoot moving the camera downward.

Up

Shoot moving the camera upward.

Data storage

Set the saving location for shot images. Appears when microSD card is inserted.

Internal storage

Save shot images in the internal storage.

SD card

Save shot images in a microSD card.

❖Note

- Some settings cannot be used in combination with one another.

Recording videos

Tap the start recording icon ( )/stop recording icon ( ) or the recording screen for recording a video. For video recording screen, only landscape screen is supported. Recorded videos are automatically saved in the internal storage/microSD card.

1 From the Home screen, tap and [Camera].

2 Tap of photo/video switch icon (P.187).

- The video recording screen (P.187) appears.

■ Tapping the start recording ( )/stop recording ( ) icon

On the recording screen, tap the start recording icon ( ) to start recording, and tap the stop recording icon ( ) to stop recording.

■ Tapping the recording screen

Set "Touch capture", then tap the start recording icon to start recording, and tap the stop recording icon to stop recording.

- To set "Touch capture", on the recording screen, tap , then tap [Capturing method]▶[Touch capture].

❖Information

- Do not cover the microphone with fingers etc. when recording videos.
- When you connect Stereo Headset with Microphone (Sample), commercially available earphone set or other Bluetooth device, shutter sound may be softer.

Changing the recording settings

1 From the Home screen, tap and [Camera].

2 Tap of photo/video switch icon (P.187).

- The video recording screen (P.187) appears.

3 On the shooting screen, tap , then tap item to set.

- Several setting icons are displayed on the shooting screen in advance. The displayed setting icons change depending on the setting conditions.
- For setting items and icons, see "Video camera setting" (P.196).

4 Tap an option in the selected setting.

- If you change setting options, icons displayed on the shooting screen change to the set items.

❖Information

- To replace setting item icons displayed on the recording screen, tap on the recording screen and touch and hold a setting item and drag it to a dotted frame.
- To delete a setting item icon displayed on the shooting screen, touch and hold an icon and drag it to displayed in the center of the screen.
- or capturing mode icons (P.188) displayed on the recording screen cannot be moved or deleted.

Video camera setting

Scenes

Use Scenes to quickly set up the camera for various scene conditions.

Off

Adjust color shade or brightness automatically.

Soft snap

Settings are optimized to give brighter and warmer skin tones.

Landscape

Shoot landscape depicting trees with vivid color and focusing on distant objects.

Night scene

Shoot a crisp and clear night scene.

Beach and snow

Reconstruct beach and snowy scene brightly and vividly.

Sports

To shoot fast-moving object, shorten exposure time to minimize motion blurring.

Party

Shoot an indoor picture creating good atmosphere of indoor lighting.

Video resolution

Set the resolution for recording. An image with a higher resolution requires more memory.

Full HD

Full wide HD format with 16:9 aspect ratio, 1920×1080 pixels. Use when the capturing mode (P.188) is set to "Video camera".

HD 720p

HD format with 16:9 aspect ratio, 1280×720 pixels. Use when the capturing mode (P.188) is set to "Video camera".

VGA

VGA format with 4:3 aspect ratio, 640×480 pixels.

QVGA

QVGA format with 4:3 aspect ratio, 320×240 pixels. Use when the capturing mode (P.188) is set to "Front video".

Photo light

Use the photo light to shoot when lighting conditions are poor or in backlight.

On

The photo light turns on.

Off
The photo light does not turn on. Sometimes the video quality can be better without a photo light, even if lighting conditions are poor. Recording a good video without using the photo light requires a steady hand.

Self-timer
Start recording when a set time has elapsed after tapping the shutter icon.

On (10 sec.)
Start recording 10 seconds after tapping.

On (2 sec.)
Start recording 2 seconds after tapping.

Off
Start recording immediately after tapping.

Focus mode
Set focus controls.

Single autofocus
The camera automatically focuses on the object.

Face detection
Detect a face to focus (P.200).

Exposure value
Adjusting brightness with Exposure value.

Exposure value
Drag the bar to adjust the exposure value.

White balance
Adjust the color balance to the light source.

Auto
Adjust the color balance automatically to the light source.

Incandescent
Adjust the color balance for lighting like incandescent bulb.

Fluorescent
Adjust the color balance for lighting like fluorescent.

Daylight
Adjust the color balance for a sunny place.

Cloudy
Adjust the color balance for a cloudy sky or shaded area.

Metering
Measure the brightness on the shooting screen to determine a well-balanced exposure automatically.

Center
Put emphasis at the center of the shooting screen and measure photometry at whole view finder to adjust the exposure.

Average
Adjust the exposure based on the brightness of the whole shooting screen.

Spot
Measure photometry only at the center of the shooting screen to adjust the exposure.

Image stabilizer

Compensate for movements of the camera while recording a video.

On

Reduce blur.

Off

The stabilizer is not used.

Geotagging

Tag videos location information (geotag) for the recording spot. Enable the location information service setting to add Geotag. For details on location information service, see "Location services" (P.216).

On

Geotag (location information) is added to specify the recording spot of the video.

Off

Recording location cannot be viewed on a map.

Microphone

Set whether to pick up the surrounding sound when recording videos.

On

Pick up the surrounding sound when recording videos.

Off

Do not pick up the surrounding sound when recording videos.

Capturing method

Set the recording method.

On-screen button

Tap the start recording icon/stop recording icon to start/stop recording a video.

Touch capture

Tap the recording screen to start/stop recording a video.

Quick launch

On the screen unlock screen, drag Quick launch icon ( ) to the left to activate the camera (P.199).

Launch and capture

Activate the camera to shoot a photo immediately.

Launch only (still camera)

Activate the camera to display shooting screen.

Launch and record movie

Activate the camera to record a video immediately.

Launch only (movie camera)

Activate the camera to display recording video screen.

Data storage

Set the saving location for recorded videos. Appears when microSD card is inserted.

Internal storage

Save recorded videos in the internal storage.

SD card
Save recorded videos in a microSD card.

❖Note

- Some settings cannot be used in combination with one another.

Front camera

Front camera allows you to shoot your own picture or video while watching the shooting screen.

1 From the Home screen, tap and [Camera].

- The still picture shooting screen (P.187) appears. For recording videos, tap on the photo/video switch icon (P.187) to display the video recording screen (P.187).

2 On the shooting screen, tap the capturing mode icon (P.188), then tap [Front camera]/[Front video].

3 Shoot photo/video.

- For information on how to shoot, see "Shooting still pictures" (P.188) or "Recording videos" (P.195).

❖Information

- When using Front camera, "Self-timer", "Smile shutter", "Geotagging", "Capturing method", "Data storage" can be set. Other "Still camera setting" (P.189) are not supported by Front camera.
  - Resolution for Front camera is "VGA". The resolution cannot be changed.
  - The settings take over the camera settings set at the time when switching.
- For using Front video camera, "Video resolution", "Self-timer", "Geotagging", "Microphone", "Capturing method", "Data storage" can be set. Other "Video camera setting" (P.196) are not supported by Front video camera.
  - The settings take over the video settings set at the time when switching ("Video resolution" is changed to "VGA").

Quick launch

Quick launch allows you to activate camera to shoot without unlocking the screen lock.

❖Information

- To use Quick launch, on Preferred apps settings (P.70), set "Set all to" or "Lock screen" to "Xperia™", and set "Slide/Touch" for screen unlocking method (P.147) in advance.

1 On the screen unlock screen, drag Quick launch icon ( ) to the left.

- "Launch and capture" is set by default. Activate the camera to shoot a photo immediately.
- Shot pictures are automatically saved in the internal storage/microSD card.

❖Information

- To change Quick launch operations, set from the shooting screen. For details, see "Quick launch" (P.192).
- By default, on the screen unlocking screen, tap to activate camera.

Face detection

You can use face detection to bring an off-center face into focus. The camera automatically detects up to 5 faces at a time. A yellow frame indicates a face to focus on, and white frames indicate the rest. An appropriate face is determined by distance from the camera and off-center balance, and is focused automatically. You can also tap one of the frames to select which face should be in focus.

Setting face detection

1 From the Home screen, tap and [Camera].

- The still picture shooting screen (P.187) appears. For recording videos, tap on the photo/video switch icon (P.187) to display the video recording screen (P.187).
- Capturing mode (P.188) is set to "Normal" or "Video camera".

2 On the shooting screen, tap and [Focus mode]▶[Face detection].

Shoot using face detection

1 With Face detection set, point the camera at the object.

- Each detected face is framed (up to 5 faces).

2 Tap the frame you want to focus on or let the camera select which face to focus on without tapping.

- A yellow frame shows the face in focus.

3 Shoot photo/video.

- For information on how to shoot, see "Shooting still pictures" (P.188) or "Recording videos" (P.195).

Smile Shutter

Smile shutter allows you to capture a face just as it smiles. The camera detects up to 5 faces and selects 1 face for smile shutter and auto focus. A yellow frame shows which face is selected. When the selected face smiles, the frame turns to green and the camera automatically takes a photo.

Setting smile shutter

1 From the Home screen, tap and [Camera].

- The still picture shooting screen (P.187) appears.

2 On the shooting screen, tap , then tap [Smile Shutter].

3 Select smile level for the smile shutter.

- Set "Off" to cancel smile shutter.

Taking a photo using smile shutter

1 Set smile shutter, and point the camera at the object.

- Each detected face is framed (up to 5 faces).
- The camera selects which face to focus on. A yellow frame shows the face in focus.

2 The camera automatically takes the photo when the object in focus smiles.

- Shot pictures are automatically saved in the internal storage/microSD card.
- If no smile is detected, operate the steps in "Shooting still pictures" (P.188) to shoot a picture.

Picture effect

Picture effect allows you to shoot pictures with various picture effects.

Setting picture effects

1 From the Home screen, tap and [Camera].

- The still picture shooting screen (P.187) appears.

2 On the shooting screen, tap the capturing mode icon (P.188), then tap [Picture effect].

3 Select a picture effect.

- Select from "Nostalgic", "Miniature", "Vivid", "Filter", "Fisheye", "Sketch", "Partial color", "Harris shutter" or "Kaleidoscope".

❖Information

- On the screen for selecting a picture effect, press ◁ ▷ to capture a screenshot.
- Resolution for the picture effect is "2MP 16:9". The resolution cannot be changed.

Taking a picture using picture effect

1 Set picture effect, and point the camera at the object.

- Tap or pinch to change the picture effect setting.

2 Tap the shutter icon ( ).

- Shot pictures are automatically saved in the internal storage/microSD card.

❖Information

- When you take a picture using picture effect, "Touch capture" (P.194) is not available.

Sweep Panorama

Use Sweep Panorama to shoot panoramic image with wide angle.
Aligning the white frame on the screen with the black frame, move the camera slowly toward the set shooting direction to shoot.

Setting Sweep Panorama

1 From the Home screen, tap and [Camera].

- The still picture shooting screen (P.187) appears.

2 On the shooting screen, tap the capturing mode icon (P.188), then tap [Sweep Panorama].

- Tap / to set "Shooting direction" (P.194) or "Photo light" (P.191).

Shooting Sweep Panorama

1 Set Sweep Panorama, point the camera at the object.

2 Shoot a still picture.

- For information on how to shoot pictures, see "Shooting still pictures" (P.188).
- A white frame and big black frame appear on the shooting screen.

3 Aligning the white frame with the black frame, slowly move the camera from left to right.

- If you change shooting direction, slowly move the camera in the set direction.
- Shot pictures are saved automatically in the internal storage/microSD card.

Playing multimedia content

Photos or videos that you took with the terminal or multimedia contents (music, photos, videos, etc.) saved in the internal storage or microSD card are viewed/played in "Media Player", "WALKMAN", "Albums", etc. The terminal can play the following multimedia contents:

Type	File format
Sound	WAV (PCM, G.711) (.wav), AAC (.3gp, .m4a, .mp4), AAC+ (.3gp, .m4a, .mp4), eAAC+ (.3gp, .m4a, .mp4), MP3 (.mp3), AMR-NB (.3gp), AMR-WB (.3gp), MIDI (SP-MIDI/GM/GML (.mid), XMF (.xmf), Mobile XMF 1.0 (.mxmf), RTTTL/RTX (.rtttl, .rtx), OTA (.ota), iMelody (.imy)), Ogg Vorbis (.ogg), FLAC (.flac), PIFF (.isma)
Still image	JPEG (.jpeg, .jpg), GIF (.gif), PNG (.png), BMP (.bmp), WEBP (.webp)
Video	H263 (.3gp, .mp4), H264 AVC (.3gp, .mp4), MPEG-4 SP (.3gp), VP8 (.webm, .mkv), Xvid (.avi), Quicktime (.mov), PIFF (.ismv)

Copyright protected content

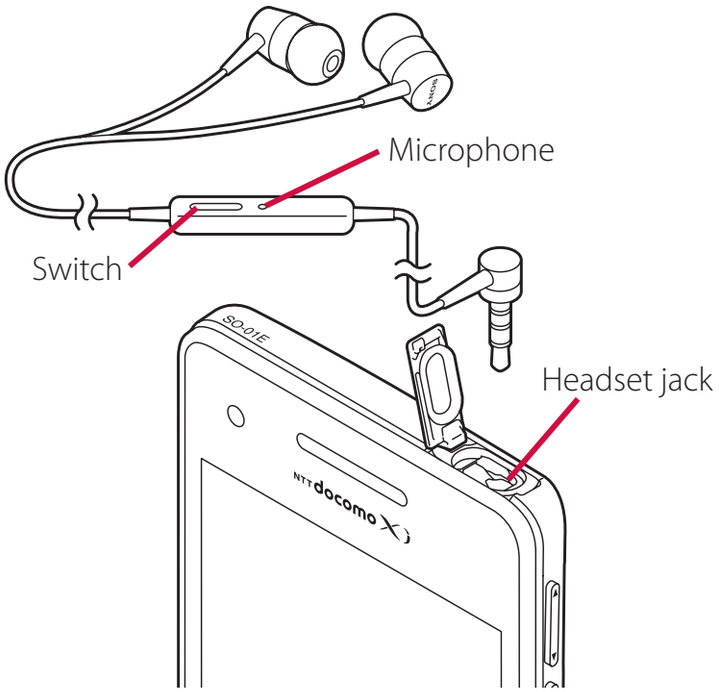
Avoid copyright infringements when you handle photos, videos, or sound recorded using the terminal, e.g. copy/edit. In addition, avoid rights infringements of portraits by using these photos without consent, altering them or by other means. Note that capturing or recording a stage performance, entertainment or exhibition may be prohibited even if for personal use.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Using Stereo Headset with Microphone

1 Connect the plug of Stereo Headset with Microphone (Sample) to headset jack of the terminal.

- Check the connecting direction to connect correctly. Wrong connection may cause damage.
- When Smart Connect appears, follow the onscreen instructions.



❖Information

- When you listen to Media Player/WALKMAN/FM radio with Stereo Headset with Microphone connecting to the terminal, you can switch on/off by pressing the switch of Stereo Headset with Microphone. However, operation may differ depending on the conditions of use.
- When using the supplied 1Seg antenna cable SO01, connect Stereo Headset with Microphone with the 1Seg antenna cable SO01, then connect with the terminal (P.176).
  When you do not watch 1Seg, Stereo Headset with Microphone can be used without the 1Seg antenna cable SO01.
- If receiving a call when using Stereo Headset with Microphone, music or 1Seg program stops, and the ringtone sounds.
  - If receiving a call when using Media Player, playing music resumes by tapping the play key on the Media Player screen after the call ends.
  - If receiving a call when using WALKMAN, playing music resumes when the call ends.
  - If receiving a call while watching 1Seg program, 1Seg program restarts by displaying 1Seg screen after call.
- If you connect a commercially available earphone set, sound may not be output depending on the earphone set.

Album

Images, photos and videos you took can be viewed and played. Also, use Media Go to transfer content to the terminal and to take content from an external device. For details, refer to "Using microUSB cable" (P.154).

Viewing photo/video

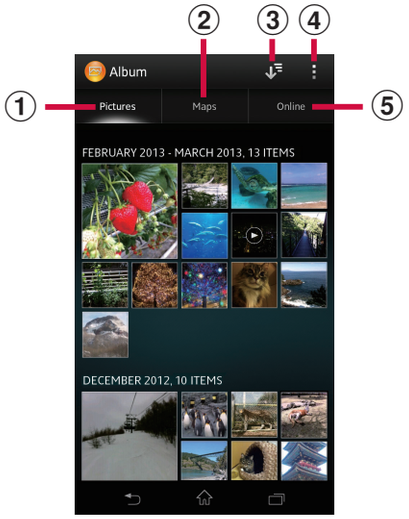
1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Album].

- Album screen appears.
- ▶ icon is displayed on the video files.

❖Information

- Depending on the number of saved images, it may take some times to load images.

Album screen



① Pictures tab
- Pictures are displayed in a list of chronological order.

② Maps tab
- Geotagged images appear on a map.

③ Show album list

④ View optional menu

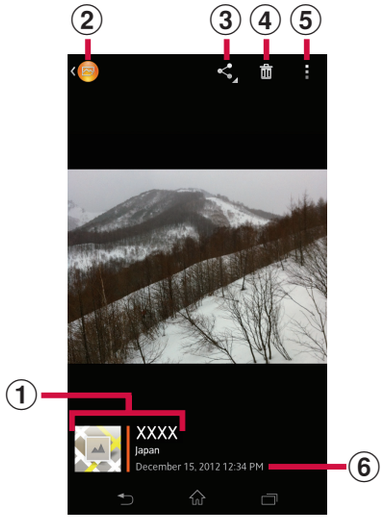
⑤ Online tab
- Display images in albums in synchronized online services or images on a device registered in the Media server.

Viewing photos

1 Tap a photo on the Album screen.

- The photo is played.
- Tap the screen to display information such as shooting date, option menu icons, etc.

Still picture viewing screen



① Location information
- For a geotagged image, a country name and a region name appear, and tap the icon to view the image on the map.

② Back to the image list
③ View share menu (P.206)
④ Delete image (P.207)
⑤ View optional menu
⑥ Shooting date and time

❖Information

- Pinch-out/in on the photo viewing screen to zoom in/out image.
- The items vary depending on the selected file.

Playing video

1 Tap a video on the Album screen.
- Video playback screen appears.

2 Tap ▶.
- Video is played.

Operating image files

Sharing image files

You can share image files by attaching to Gmail or Email, uploading to Picasa or Google+, or sending to other devices via Bluetooth or infrared communication.

1 Tap an image file to share in the Album screen.

2 Tap the screen and ⋖.
- Menu for sharing image file appears.
- Tap [See all...] to display all share menus.

3 Select sharing method for image file.
- After this step, follow the onscreen instructions.
- The items vary depending on the selected file.
- Some items cannot be operated in some image files.

❖Information

- On the Album screen, tap ⋮ and [Select items], then select image files to operate. You can operate several files as a group.
- When you select "Infrared" in Step 3, the Send via infrared message appears. Tap [OK] to start sending. For details on infrared communication, see "Using infrared communication" (P.158).

- For shared files, file size and the file type are not particularly limited, but may be limited by the application to transfer. DRM content cannot be shared.

Deleting image files

1 On the photo viewing screen/ video playing screen, tap and tap [OK].

- Image file is deleted.

❖Information

- To delete several files, on the album screen, tap and [Select items], then select image files to delete, and then tap and tap [OK].

Using optional menu

View slideshow, edit image, set image to phonebook entry or as wallpaper, check shooting date and time, etc.

1 On the photo viewing screen/ video playing screen, tap the screen and tap .

2 From the displayed menu, select item you want to use.

- The items vary depending on the selected file.
- Some items cannot be operated in some image files.

❖Information

- In Step 2, tap "Throw" to display the connection device selection screen (if you do not connect Wi-Fi network, tap [Settings] to display the setting screen for Wireless & networks). Select a device detected on the connection device selection screen, and tap the device name to play on to share a file between a DLNA device and the terminal.

YouTube

YouTube is a free online video streaming service. You can play, search for and upload videos.

- A packet communication charge is applied when downloading or uploading video content using mobile networks.

Playing YouTube video

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [YouTube].

- If you do not set Google account, the Google account setting screen appears. Follow the onscreen instructions.
- A list of videos appears. You can select from categories.

2 Tap a video to play it.

- Tap the screen to display play/pause icon or progress bar. Drag the marker left or right on the progress to change playing point.
- Turn the terminal sideways to switch to the landscape view.
- Tap [↩] to stop playing and return to the video list screen.
- To quit YouTube, tap [⌂].

❖Information

- For movies with caption function which can display subtitles, "CC" appears on the playback screen in the landscape mode. Tap [CC] to set the caption function.
- When "HD" or "HQ" appears while playing in the landscape view, tap [HD]/[HQ] to play in high quality. A video plays in high quality when Wi-Fi is connected. To always play video in high quality even when mobile network is connected, tap [⋮], then tap [Settings]▶[General] then mark "High quality on mobile" checkbox.
- Tap [🔍] to search videos. To delete search history, tap [⋮] and [Settings]▶[Search]▶[Clear search history]▶[OK].

Connecting the terminal to TV to watch photos and videos

This terminal supports MHL connection. To connect to an MHL compatible TV, insert a commercially available MHL cable into the microUSB jack of the terminal and the MHL jack of the TV.
To connect to an HDMI compatible TV, use a commercially available HDMI connector (MHL adapter) and an HDMI cable etc. to connect to the terminal.
Connect to a TV to display photos and videos on the TV screen.

Connecting to TV to activate an application by TV launcher

1 Connect the terminal with the Home screen or Application screen displayed to a TV using an MHL cable.

■ When the Home screen is displayed

- Activate TV launcher automatically.

■ When the Applications screen is displayed

- , MHL appears on the status bar. Also, drag the status bar downwards and tap [TV launcher] to activate TV launcher.

2 Switch the TV to MHL input mode.

- The screen of the terminal is shown on the TV screen.

3 Flick an icon left or right to select application you want to use.

❖Information

- While MHL is connected, drag the status bar downwards and tap [MHL connected] to make output settings or check using a TV remote control etc.
- On the TV launcher screen, select an album art in WALKMAN at the upper left to display WALKMAN screen.
- On the TV launcher screen, Tap [Home] to display the Home screen of the terminal.
- On the TV launcher screen, tap [Add] or ⋮ and tap [Add], then select the desired shortcut to add to the TV launcher screen.
- On the TV launcher screen, tap ⋮ and [Rearrange] to rearrange shortcuts on the TV launcher screen.
- On the TV launcher screen, tap ⋮ and [Delete] to delete shortcuts on the TV launcher screen.
- Removing the MHL cable from the terminal severs connection, however, TV may remain to MHL input mode or HDMI input mode. Follow the instructions on the TV to switch to digital terrestrial television mode, etc.
- When you do not use MHL connection, remove the MHL cable or HDMI adapter and cancel MHL connection. If the HDMI cable remains connected, the battery may be consumed quickly.
- The terminal does not support resolution 720×576p at 50Hz for MHL output to TV.
- You can operate the TV Launcher screen, the Home screen or applications using a TV remote controller if connecting the following devices.
  - MHL compatible TV supporting Remote Control Protocol (RCP)
  - HDMI compatible TV supporting Consumer Electronic Control (CEC)

  To connect to an HDMI compatible TV, a commercially available HDMI connector (MHL adapter) compatible with RCP is required.
  Some applications may not support remote control operations.

Media Player

Play back videos and music stored on a microSD card using Media Player.

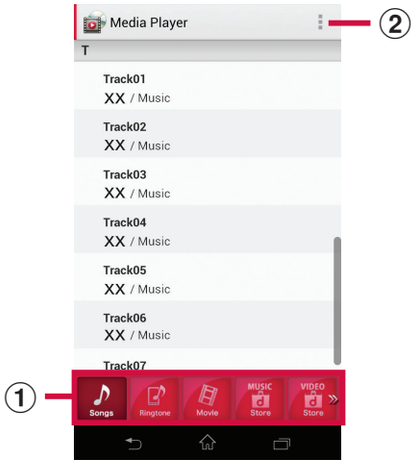
- For information on how to copy music and video data from a PC, see "Using microUSB cable" (P.154).
- For information on file formats of playable data, see "Playing multimedia content" (P.203).

Activating Media Player

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Media Player].

- Media Player screen appears.

Media Player screen



① Tab
- Change displayed information.
- Flick left or right.

② View optional menu

❖Information

- To change the order of tab icons, tap and tap [Settings]▶[Arrange icons], drag up and down on the item to change then tap [Apply].

Playing music/video

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Media Player].

- Tap [Movie] tab at the bottom of the screen to display video list.

2 Tap a song/video.

- The playback screen appears to start playing back music/video.

Music playback screen

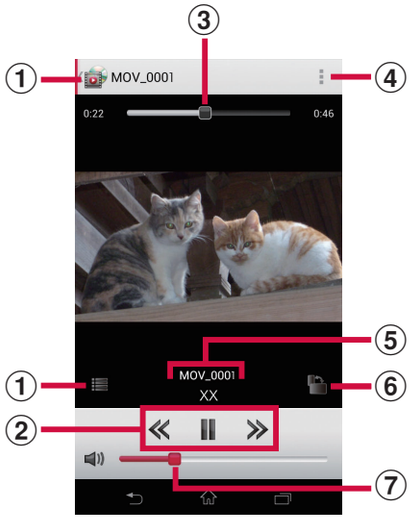
① Back to song list
② Go back to the beginning of the track or to the previous track/Play or pause/Skip to the next track
③ Playback point
- Appears when album art is tapped.

④ View optional menu
⑤ Album art
⑥ Show track information
⑦ Repeat OFF/Repeat ON/1 track repeat
⑧ Shuffle OFF/Shuffle ON
⑨ Volume control
- Alternatively, press [◁ ▷] during playback to adjust volume.

❖Information

- You can return to the Home screen to perform another operation while listening to music in the background. To go back to the music playback screen, drag the status bar downward and tap the name of the song that is being played.

Video playback screen



① Back to video list
② Go back to the beginning of the video or to the previous video/Play or pause/Skip to the next video
③ Playback point
④ View optional menu
⑤ Show video information
⑥ Auto-rotate screen ON/OFF
- Tap to turn red and disable Auto-rotate screen.

⑦ Volume control
- Alternatively, press [◁ ▷] during playback to adjust volume.

❖Information

- While in landscape mode, tap the screen to display option menu icons etc.

Play list

You can play back songs in the order you decided using playlist.

Creating a playlist

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Media Player].

2 Flick left and right on tabs at the bottom of the screen and tap [Play list].

- Play list screen appears.

3 Tap [Create new] and enter the access point name and tap [OK].

4 Tap [Add songs to playlist] and select songs you want to add.

- You can also select songs from "Artists" and "Albums".
- on the selected song turns red and the song is added to Play list by each tap.

5 Tap [Apply]▶[Save]▶[OK].

Editing songs in playlist

1 On the play list screen, select a playlist to edit and tap [Edit].

■ Changing order of the songs

Drag up and down in song to change order and tap [Save]▶[OK].

■ Deleting songs from playlist

Select a song to delete and tap [Save]▶[OK].

Deleting playlist

1 On the play list screen, tap [Edit].

2 Tap a playlist you want to delete.

3 Tap [Save]▶[OK].

❖Information

- "Recently added songs", "Recently played songs", and "Most played songs" playlists cannot be deleted.

Timescape™

Timescape™ (hereinafter referred to as Timescape) displays various information such as Facebook, Foursquare, Twitter or mixi updates, etc. in chronological order. You can see a tile preview of events in chronological order before choosing to view the full content. With (infinite button), you can view all communication information related to the registered contacts (P.215).

❖Information

- To make best use of Timescape, you can set up your social networking service (SNS) account. You can check the update of set Facebook/Foursquare/Twitter/mixi etc. by Timescape.
- If you do not have a Social Networking Service account, you can create a new account in the following websites.
  - Facebook
    http://www.facebook.com/
  - Foursquare
    https://foursquare.com/
  - Twitter
    http://www.twitter.com/
  - mixi
    http://mixi.jp/ (In Japanese only)
- Note that, you cannot view emails of Gmail or other Email application accounts in Timescape.

Initial settings for Timescape

The first time you use Timescape, a setup wizard will guide you the necessary steps to set up account.

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Timescape™].

2 Tap a tile.

3 If you want, enter your Facebook/Foursquare/Twitter/mixi account information.

4 Tap [Done].

❖Information

- In the setup wizard, tap [Extension search] on the account registration screen to connect to Google Play and search new services for Timescape.
- After completion of setup wizard, you can change the settings. On the Timescape screen, tap and tap [Settings]▶[Set up services].
- If the automatic update of Facebook/Foursquare/Twitter/mixi is set, you can check information update sooner; however, the battery runs out quickly. To save the battery, set to manual update.

Activating Timescape

Timescape screen

① View optional menu
② Latest comment
- Display the latest comments posted to Facebook/ Foursquare/Twitter/mixi.

③ Tile
- Display various information such as Facebook/ Foursquare/Twitter/mixi friends updates in chronological order.

④ Filter
- Tap a filter icon to narrow the information down to a certain type.
- Display order of filters may differ.

Displaying tiles by service

Apply filters to narrow tiles to display by service.

1 Tap the filter icons on the Timescape screen.

Filter Icon	Displayed tile
	All tiles
	Updates from your Facebook contacts
	Updates from your Foursquare contacts
	Updates from your Twitter contacts
	Updates from your mixi contacts

Previewing tiles

Select a tile to view the content on the tile.

1 Flick a tile up and left to display a tile to check.

Displaying detailed information for a tile

1 Flick a tile up and left to display a tile to check.

2 Tap a tile.
- A detailed information screen appears for the tile.

Tile icons

The following icons on a tile indicate a type of event. Tap the tile to display the update.

Icon	Event
	Facebook update
	Foursquare update
	Twitter update
	mixi update

Refreshing the Timescape screen

When you refresh the Timescape screen, the terminal connects to the Internet to update information from your Facebook, Foursquare, Twitter and mixi whose accounts are set in Timescape.

1 On the Timescape screen, tap and tap [Refresh].

Posting to Facebook, Foursquare, Twitter, mixi from Timescape

1 On the Timescape screen, tap and tap [Update status].

2 Mark the service you want to post and tap [Continue].

3 Enter the text and tap [Post].

The infinite button in Timescape

When you tap a tile, (infinite button) may appear in the upper right corner. By tapping , you can view the communication log by registered information in the contacts or tile filter event.

Viewing the registered information of contacts in Timescape

1 On the Timescape screen, tap a tile.

2 Tap .

- Communication logs and information related to the selected tile by event appear. Flick left and right the filter at the bottom of the screen to switch displayed information.

Setting up Timescape

1 On the Timescape screen, tap and tap [Settings].

Update mode	Set your Facebook/Foursquare/Twitter/mixi account information to be updated manually/automatically when Timescape is activated.
Timescape™ content	Change a content type displayed in Timescape.
Set up services	Set Facebook/Foursquare/Twitter/mixi account or search new service of Timescape.

Location services

There are two ways to find your location, using Mobile networks with Wi-Fi (Wireless network) or GPS. Wireless network technology determines your position fast but accuracy may vary. If you use GPS technology it may take a little longer, but it will find your exact position. You can enable both Wireless network and GPS to benefit from both technologies when trying to find your position.

GPS function

The terminal has a GPS receiver that uses satellite signals to calculate your location. Some GPS features use the Internet. Data rates and charges may apply.
When you use functions that require the GPS receiver to find your location, make sure you have a clear view of the sky. If the GPS receiver does not find your location after a few minutes, you should move to another location. To help the search, stand still and do not cover the GPS antenna, FOMA/Xi/Wi-Fi/Bluetooth antenna (P.30). The first time you use the GPS it may take up to 10 minutes before your location is found.

- Use the GPS system with great care. DOCOMO is not liable for any damage caused by abnormality of the system.
- Note that DOCOMO shall have no liabilities for any purely economic loss including those due to missing a chance to check the measurement (communication) results because of external factors (including the running out of the battery), such as a failure, malfunction, or any other problems of the terminal or the power failure.
- You cannot use the terminal as a navigation device for an aircraft, vehicle, and person. Note that DOCOMO shall have no liabilities whatsoever even if you suffer damage or loss while performing a navigation using the location information.
- You cannot use the terminal as a high-accuracy measurement GPS. Note that DOCOMO shall have no liabilities whatsoever even if you suffer damage or loss due to a deviation of the location information.
- The GPS signals cannot be easily received near a vehicle's sun visor with metal parts.
- GPS is operated by the U.S. Department of Defense. The department controls the accuracy of the system, and manages the system. Therefore, GPS radio wave condition may be controlled (degradation of accuracy, suspension of radio wave transmission, etc.) at

the discretion of the U.S. Department of Defense.

- Some wireless communications products (mobile phone, data detectors and some others) block satellite signals and also causes instability of signal reception.
- Some map displays based on location information (latitude/longitude information) may be not accurate due to some countries' or regions' regulations.

Where radio waves are difficult to receive

Note that radio waves may not be received or it may be difficult to receive radio waves in the following conditions, since GPS uses radio waves from a satellite.

- Inside or immediately under a building
- Inside a bag or box
- Inside or under a thick covering of trees
- In a car, inside a train compartment
- When there are obstructions (people or objects) near the terminal
- Inside a basement or tunnel, and below the ground or water
- In buildings-clustered or residential area
- Near a high-voltage cable
- Bad weather such as heavy rain or snow

❖Note

- If some of the GPS functions are not available, or if none of them are, check that your contract includes the use of the Internet, and see "Wireless & networks" (P.118).
- NTT DOCOMO is not liable for navigation services or for the accuracy of location services.

Enabling GPS function

1 **From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Settings].**

2 **Tap [Location services].**

3 **Tap [GPS satellites].**

4 **Read the note and tap [Agree].**
- "GPS satellites" checkbox is marked.

❖Information

- Alternatively, drag the status bar downwards, tap , then read the notes and tap [Agree] to enable the GPS function.

Enabling current location search

Enable to search a current location using mobile network and Wi-Fi.

1 **From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Settings].**

2 **Tap [Location services].**

3 **Tap [Google's location service].**

4 **Read the note and tap [Agree].**

5 Read the note on location information and tap [Agree].

- "Google's location service" checkbox is marked.

❖Information

- Wireless network users' location information is stored without specifying who they are. Some location information is stored even when the application is not running.

Using Google Maps

The Google Maps application lets you view your current location, find other locations and calculate routes. When you start the Google Maps application, your approximate location is shown using information from nearby mobile towers. Your location is updated with a more precise position when the GPS receiver finds your location.

❖Information

- Make sure to enable the location information service setting before trying to get your position.
- To use Google Maps, enable data connection (LTE/3G/GPRS) or connect to Wi-Fi.
- Google Maps does not cover the whole world.
- Only using LTE/3G/Wi-Fi connection may not detect some locations.
- Google may provide updated service or function.

1 From the Home screen, tap and [Maps].

- If a message appears, tap [OK].
- A map screen appears.

Finding the current location on the map

1 On the map screen, tap .

- The blinking blue circle shows the current location.
- If you tap , the terminal's geomagnetic compass links the direction displayed on the map.

Viewing Street View

Street View does not cover some areas. For uncovered area, Street View icon appears in light gray.

1 Touch and hold a spot on the map that you are going to look at in Street View.

2 Tap the displayed call-out.

3 [Street view]▶[OK].

- On the Street View display, tap and tap [Compass mode]. The compass in Street View shows the same direction as the terminal's geomagnetic compass.

Searching for a location you want to look at

1 On the map screen, tap .

2 Fill out the search bar.

- You can enter addresses, city names, business types and institution names (for example, London and art museum).
- If a list of places searched or referred previously appears on the screen, tap an address, etc. on the list to check the location on the map.

3 Tap on the software keyboard.

- Search result appears on the map.
- When "Did you mean:" appears at the top of the map or "RESULT LIST" appears at the bottom of the map, tap to select the place to view.

4 Tap a destination.

- A detailed information screen appears.

❖Information

- On the detailed information screen, you can check the route or phone number for the searched location. The items displayed vary depending on the location.
- On the map screen, tap to select a category such as "Restaurants", "Cafes" and show it on the map.

Zooming in or out on a map

1 Pinch in/out the map screen.

❖Information

- Alternatively, double-tap the screen to zoom in.

Changing the layers

You can select information to overlay on the map.

1 On the map screen, tap .

2 Tap information to display.

- Traffic information and routes are not available in all locations.

Traffic	Show traffic condition.
Satellite	Display satellite photo.
Terrain	Display geological formation.
Transit Lines	Show route information.
Latitude	Join Latitude.
My Maps	View My Maps that you create on a PC. Only viewing : You cannot create My Maps on the terminal.
Wikipedia	Display [W]. Tap [W] to display a Wikipedia article related to the location.

Getting direction

Google Maps helps you receive detailed guides for your destination.

1 On the map screen, tap .

2 Enter a start point in the upper entry field, and an end point in the lower entry field.

- Alternatively, tap at the right of the input field to select a Start point and End point from "My current location"/ "Contacts"/"Point on map"/"My Places".

3 Select a transportation from (Driving)/ (Transit)/ (Walking).

- When you select transit, you can select preferred transit or conditions.

4 Tap [GET DIRECTIONS].

■ Going by car/on foot

Direction is shown on a map.

■ Going by public transport

Trip list appears. Tap a trip to view details.

❖Information

- The "Navigation" application is displayed if you tap . With "Navigation" application, you can use easy route search with My Location as Start point.

Clearing the Maps

Clear displayed layers, route search results and some others.

1 On the map screen, tap and tap [Clear Map].

- If there is nothing to clear, you cannot tap.

Checking where a friend is by Google Latitude

Google Latitude enables you to share location information with your friends on the map.

You need to set up a Google account (P.139) and join Latitude and invite a friend who gives his or her location information, or to receive an invitation from him or her.

Joining Latitude

You need to turn on the Wi-Fi setting beforehand. For details, see "Enabling current location search" (P.217) or "Enabling GPS function" (P.217).

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Latitude].

2 Tap [MAP VIEW].

❖Information

- To set or disable Latitude, tap on the map screen, then tap [Settings]▶[Location settings] to display a screen for the operation.
- For details of Latitude, tap on the map screen, then tap [Help]▶[How to]▶[Additional Maps features]▶[Latitude] to view the help.

Calendar

The terminal has a built-in calendar for the schedule. If you have a Google account, you can synchronize the terminal's calendar and web calendar. For details, see "Accounts & sync" (P.139).

- When you register Google account, tap the Google account displayed in "Accounts & sync" and tap [Sync Calendar] of a sync item. You can create schedule etc.

Displaying calendar

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Calendar].

- A calendar screen appears.

2 Tap [Month]/[Week]/[Day].

- Tap to move the cursor to date and time set on the terminal.
- Flick the calendar left or right to display the next or previous month/week/day according to the view mode.
- Pinch out/in on the weekly or daily schedule screen to zoom in/out calendar.

Creating a schedule in Calendar

1 Tap ＋ on the calendar screen.

2 Enter a name, date and time, location, description for event.

- If you have two or more calendar accounts, select one.

3 Select the notification intervals of the schedule.

- Tap ＋ beside "Add reminder" to add a new notification.

4 Tap [Done].

❖Information

- Tap ⌄ in "More" and flick up the screen to set "Repetition", "Attendees", "Time zone", "Show me as:", "Privacy".

Viewing schedule in Calendar

1 On the calendar screen, tap date or time when event is scheduled.

2 Tap an event to view description.

❖Information

- On the calendar screen, tap ⋮ and [My calendars] to synchronize with the docomo account. You can view the events created in "Schedule" application in the Calendar.
- If you log in to Facebook, tap [Sync Calendar] in the "Xperia™ with Facebook" (P.141) to display events in Facebook in the Calendar.

Searching events in Calendar

1 On the calendar screen, tap ⋮, then tap [Search].

2 Enter a keyword in the search box and tap 🔍 on the software keyboard.

- Search results appear. Tap an event to view details.

Releasing the reminder of a schedule or setting the snooze

1 If a reminder icon ( ) appears in the status bar, drag the bar downward.

- The reminder icon appears at set Notification time.

2 Tap a schedule.

3 Tap [Snooze all]/[Dismiss all].

- If you have any schedules on hold, they appear on the same screen.
- If you tap [Snooze all], all the alarms sound again 5 minutes later (snooze is a function that sounds the alarm some time later even though you stop it).

Changing calendar settings

Set Calendar view, reminder notifications, notification ringtone, vibration, reminder time.

1 On the calendar screen, tap , then tap [Settings].

2 Select an item to change.

Alarm & clock

With "Alarm & clock" application, you can set an alarm and use world clock, stopwatch and timer.

1 From the Home screen, tap , then [Alarm & clock].

- Alarm screen appears.

Alarm screen

① Clock display
- Tap to view date and time (P.151) setting screen.

② Add alarm (P.224)
③ Alarms set
④ Display clock in full screen
⑤ View alarm screen
⑥ View world clock (P.225)
⑦ View stop watch (P.226)
⑧ View timer (P.226)
⑨ Delete set alarm (P.224)

Setting alarm

1 On the alarm screen, tap [Add alarm].

2 Set time etc. and tap [Done].

- Tap [Advanced alarm settings] to view all setting items.

Time	Flick up and down on numbers to set time.
Repeat	Set a day of the week for the alarm.
Alarm sound	Set alarm sound.
Snooze duration	Set time interval to sound the ringtone again after stopping the ringtone.
Alarm text	Enter texts that appear while alarm is sounding.
Style settings	Mark the checkbox and tap to set alarm style for displaying the set image while sounding alarm.
Vibrate	Set whether to vibrate at the alarm time.
Alarm volume	Drag the slider left or right to adjust the volume level.
Alarm in silent mode	Set whether to sound alarm even in silent mode.
Side keys behavior	Set behavior when pressing ◁ ▷ while alarm is sounding.
Auto silent time	Set time interval until alarm automatically stops.

❖Information

- To switch on/off alarm, on the alarm screen, tap or touch and hold an alarm that is set, then tap [Turn alarm on]/[Turn alarm off].
- When an alarm is turned on, the line under lights blue.

Deleting the alarm

1 On the alarm screen, tap and mark alarm to delete.

2 Tap [Delete]▶[Yes].

- The number of marked alarms appears on the right of "Delete".

❖Information

- Alternatively, on the alarm screen, touch and hold an alarm setting you want to delete, then tap [Delete alarm]▶[Yes] to delete the alarm.

Stopping an alarm while the alarm is sounding

1 While alarm is sounding, drag to the right.

❖Information

- If you tap [Snooze], the alarm sounds again when the time set in "Snooze duration" (P.224) has passed.

Using World clock

Display the date and time in cities around the world.

1 On the alarm screen, tap "World clock" tab.

- World clock screen appears.

2 Tap [Add city].

3 Select a city.

❖Information

- Tap to display date and time set on the terminal in full screen.
- Add a city and tap , then flick the list of added cities left and right to check date and time corresponding to the terminal's settings.
- Time display in cities during day-light saving time may differ from time difference to standard time (GMT) displayed on the screen when adding a city in Step 2.

Changing World clock

You can switch, sort or delete Celsius/Fahrenheit displayed on World clock.

1 On the world clock screen, tap .

■ Setting home city

Tap [Set home city] and select a city.

■ Switching Celsius/Fahrenheit

Tap [Celsius]/[Fahrenheit].

■ Sorting

Tap [Rearrange] and drag up and down beside added cities, then tap [Done].

■ Deleting

Tap [Delete] and mark cities you want to delete, then tap [Delete]▶[Yes].

- The number of the marked cities appears on the right of "Delete".
- Alternatively, on the world clock screen, touch and hold a city you want to delete, then tap [Delete city]▶[Yes] to delete.

Using Stopwatch

1 On the alarm screen, tap "Stopwatch" tab.

2 Tap [Start].
- Measurement starts and appears in the status bar.
- Tap [Lap] to measure elapsed time.

3 Tap [Stop].
- Tap [Start] to resume measuring.
- Tap [Reset] to delete measured time and lap time.

❖Information
- Tap to display date and time set on the terminal in full screen.

Using Timer

1 On the alarm screen, tap "Timer" tab.

2 Tap [Set time].

3 Flick up and down on numbers to adjust the time and then tap [Set].

4 Tap [Start].
- Timer starts, and appears in the status bar.

5 Tap [Stop].
- Stop sounding alarm after a set time has elapsed.
- Tap [Stop] within a set time duration to pause timer. Tap [Start] to resume timer.

❖Information
- Tap to display date and time set on the terminal in full screen.
- Tap to set time from Timer history.
- Tap and select an alarm sound, then tap [Done] to change the alarm sound.
- While using a desired application, tap and to use the timer of small apps (P.83).

ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)

Move or back up data such as phonebook entries, sp-mode mails, bookmarks, etc. using external memory such as microSD card.

- Do not remove the battery pack or microUSB card during backup or restoring. Doing so may damage the terminal data.
- If the battery is low, backup or restore may not be done. In that case, charge the terminal and retry to back up or restore.
- docomo apps password is required to back up or restore. For details on docomo apps password, see "docomo apps password" (P.139).

❖Information

- For details on docomo backup, tap ⋮, then tap [Help] to view the help.

Backing up

If microSD card is not installed, data such as images and movies are saved to the internal storage. You can back up only data such as images and movies stored in the internal storage. Data stored in microSD card cannot be backed up.

1 From the Home screen, tap ⊞, then tap [ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)].

2 Tap [microSDカードへ保存 (save to microSD card)].

- When you use for the first time, agree to "License agreement".

3 Tap [Backup].

4 Mark the data to back up.

- Tap [Select all] to mark all data.

5 Tap [Start backup]▶[OK].

6 Enter docomo apps password and tap [OK].

- Data is backed up in a microSD card.

Restoring

1 **From the Home screen, tap , then tap [ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)].**

2 **Tap [microSDカードへ保存 (save to microSD card)].**
- When you use for the first time, agree to "License agreement".

3 **Tap [Restore].**

4 **Tap [Select] on data type to restore and mark data to restore, and tap [Select].**
- Tap [Select latest data] to select the latest data for each data type.

5 **Tap [Add]/[Overwrite] to select restore method and tap [Start restore]►[OK].**

6 **Enter docomo apps password and tap [OK].**
- Backed up data is restored.

Copying phonebook entries registered in Google account to docomo account

You can copy contacts data registered in Google account and in the terminal to docomo account.

1 **From the Home screen, tap , then tap [ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)].**

2 **Tap [microSDカードへ保存 (save to microSD card)].**
- When you use for the first time, agree to "License agreement".

3 **Tap [Phonebook account copy], tap [Select] on Google account contacts you want to copy.**

4 **Tap [Overwrite]/[Add].**
- Phonebook data is copied to docomo account.

❖Information

- If phonebook item names (e.g. Phone number, etc.) of the other terminal are different from ones of your terminal, the item names may be changed or deleted. Also, some text may be deleted in copied destination, because savable characters in a phonebook entry vary by terminal.
- When backing up phonebook entries to microSD card, data without Name cannot be copied.
- If microSD card is low on memory, backup may not be done. In that case, delete unnecessary files to make available space.

OfficeSuite

With OfficeSuite, you can view files of Word, Excel, etc. from the terminal or a microSD card.

❖Information

- Some files may not be viewed properly due to corrupted layouts.

Starting OfficeSuite

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [OfficeSuite].

- OfficeSuite starts.

❖Information

- When you activate for the first time, a screen for register name etc. appears. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Overview of International roaming (WORLD WING)

With the international roaming (WORLD WING), you can use the terminal without changing phone number or mail address in the service area of the overseas network operator affiliated with DOCOMO. You do not need to change the settings of call and SMS.

Supporting networks

The terminal is Class 4. The terminal works in a 3G roaming area and GSM/GPRS service area. Services are also available in countries and areas supporting 3G 850MHz/GSM 850MHz. Check available areas. Use 3G network or GSM/GPRS network overseas because Xi is not available overseas.

Before using the terminal overseas, refer to the followings.

- "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]"
- DOCOMO International Services website

❖Information

- For Country codes, International call access codes, Universal number international prefix, supported countries/areas and network operators, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services Website.

Available Services

Main communication services	3G	3G 850	GSM (GPRS)
Phone	○	○	○
Message (SMS)	○	○	○
Email*	○	○	○
Browser*	○	○	○

* To use data communication during roaming, mark "Data roaming" checkbox in Mobile network settings (P.234).

❖Information

- Some services are not available depending on the overseas network operator or network.

Before using

Before leaving Japan

To use the terminal overseas, check the following in Japan.

Subscription

- Check if you subscribe WORLD WING. For details, contact "General Inquiries" on the last page.

Charging

- For AC adapter for charging overseas travel, use AC Adapter 03 (optional).

Usage charge

- Overseas usage charges (call and packet communication) differ from those in Japan.
- Some applications automatically perform packet communications. Your packet communication charges may be higher. For operation details of each application, please contact the application provider.

Advance preparation

Network service settings

If you subscribe to network services, you can use network services such as Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, Caller ID Display Request Service, etc., even overseas. However, some network services cannot be used.

- To use network services overseas, you need to set "Remote access" to activate. You can set "Remote access" in the country you stay (P.238).
- Even if the setting/canceling operation is available, some network services cannot be used depending on overseas network operators.

After arriving overseas

When you arrive overseas and turn on the terminal, an available network is automatically set.

Connectivity

When you have set search mode of "Search mode" to "Automatic" in "Service providers" settings, optimized network is automatically selected (P.233).
When you connect to the network operator conducted in flat-rate service, you can use the service with flat-rate packet communication charges overseas up to the specified upper limit per day. To use this service, subscription of packet flat-rate service in Japan is required. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services Website.

Display

During international roaming, appears on the status bar.

- You can confirm the name of the connected network operator on the Notification panel.

❖Note

- While appears on the status bar, packet communication is available. Note that packet communication fee may become high.

Date & time settings

When "Automatic date & time", "Automatic time zone" in "Date & time" are marked, the date, time and time differences of the terminal clock are corrected by receiving the information related to time and time differences from the network of overseas network operator you connect to.

- Correction of the time/time differences may not be performed correctly depending on the network of overseas network operator. In that case, set time zone manually.
- Timing of correction varies by the overseas network operator.
- Date & time (P.151)

About inquiries

- For loss or theft of the terminal or UIM/ docomo mini UIM card, immediately contact DOCOMO from the spot to take the necessary steps for suspending the use. For inquiries, see the last page. Note that you are still liable for the call and communication charge incurred after the loss or theft occurred.
- For using from land-line phone, entering "International call access code" or "Universal number international prefix" for the country is needed.

After returning to Japan

When you return to Japan, the terminal is connected to DOCOMO network automatically. If connection is failed, perform the following operations.

- Set "Network Mode" to "LTE (preferred)/ WCDMA/GSM" (P.234).
- Set "Search mode" to "Automatic" in "Service providers" settings (P.233).

Making setting for international use

When you start the international roaming or move out of your operator's network, you need to reconnect the terminal to another available network.

❖Information

- Some applications automatically perform packet communications. To disconnect packet communication manually, from the Home screen, tap and tap [Settings]▶[More...]▶[Mobile networks] and unmark "Data enabled".

Confirming and switching the network search mode

By default, network search mode is set to "Automatic". When you connect manually to an overseas network operator conducted in flat-rate service, confirm the search mode with the following operations and switch to "Manual".

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Settings].

2 Tap [More...]▶[Mobile networks]▶[Service providers].

- If a note appears, tap [OK].

3 Tap [Search mode]▶[Manual].

4 From "AVAILABLE NETWORKS", mark a network to use.

- To display available networks, tap [Search networks].

❖Information

- If you set a network manually, the terminal is not reconnected to another network automatically even if you move out of the network area.
- To return to "Automatic", tap [Automatic] in Step 3.

Changing network mode settings

You can change network mode settings according to the network mode (communication method) adopted by the overseas network operator.

1 **From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Settings].**

2 **Tap [More...]▶[Mobile networks]▶[Network Mode].**

3 **Select a network mode you use.**
- You can select from "LTE/WCDMA" "GSM only" and "LTE (preferred)/WCDMA/GSM". If you select "LTE (preferred)/WCDMA/GSM" to switch available network automatically.

Activating data roaming

1 **From the Home screen, tap , then tap [Settings].**

2 **Tap [More...]▶[Mobile networks].**

3 **Tap [Data roaming].**

4 **Read the note and tap [Yes].**
- "Data roaming" checkbox is marked.

Making/Receiving calls in the country you stay

When you arrive overseas and turn on the terminal, an available network is automatically set.
- Check that the battery and signal levels are high enough.
- Depending on the network operator, even if the Caller ID notification is active, the caller ID may not be notified or appear properly.
  In this case, calls cannot be made from the call log.

Making a call to outside country you stay (including Japan)

You can make a call from overseas using the international roaming service.
- You can easily make international calls from the country you stay to Japan or to other countries by entering prefix "+" and then the country code and phone number.

1 **From the Home screen, tap , then tap "Dial" tab.**

2 Dial + (touch and hold [0])▶Country code▶Area code (City code)▶Enter a phone number.

- If the area code begins with "0", omit "0". However, "0" may be required to dial to some country or area such as Italy.
- To call an overseas "WORLD WING" user, enter "81" (Japan) for the country code.

3 Tap .

❖Information

- During international roaming, if you make an international call to Japan using DOCOMO's phone application, the "International dialing assist" screen appears. You can make a call without entering country code from that screen.
  For details on International dialing assist, see "Setting international dial assistance" (P.237).

Making a call within the country you stay

You can make a call by entering the phone number of the other party's land-line phone or mobile phone in the same way you do in Japan.

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap "Dial" tab.

2 Enter the other party's phone number.

- To make a call to land-line phone, enter the area code (city code) + other party's phone number.

3 Tap .

Making a call to WORLD WING user overseas

When the other party uses international roaming service, make a call as an international call to Japan even when you stay in the same country as the other party.

Receiving a call in the country you stay

You can receive a call using the international roaming service.

1 While receiving a call, touch and hold (left) and drag it to (right).

2 When the conversation is finished, tap [End call].

❖Information

- When you received a call during the international roaming, regardless of which country the call is from, it is forwarded internationally from Japan. A caller is charged for a call fee to Japan, and the receiver is charged for a reception fee.

Having the other party call you

- Having someone make a call from Japan to the country you stay
  To have the other party make a call from a land-line phone or mobile phone in Japan to the terminal in the country you stay, the other party only needs to dial the phone number as in Japan.
- Having someone make a call from other than Japan to the country you stay
  You have to receive a call through Japan no matter where you are; therefore, the other party needs to enter the international call access code and "81" (Country code of Japan).
  International access code - 81 - 90 (or 80) - XXXX - XXXX

International roaming settings

Make settings for using international roaming or international calls.

Settings for making/receiving calls overseas

Set restricting incoming calls overseas or using roaming guidance.

- For some overseas network operators, settings may not be made.

Restricting incoming calls for roaming

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap .

2 Tap [Call settings]▶[Roaming settings].

3 Tap [Restricting incoming calls].

- Select items you want to use.

Activate restricting	Tap any of "Restricting all incomings"/ "Restricting incoming of video call/ 64K data", enter the network security code, and tap [OK].
Deactivate restricting	Enter the network security code and tap [OK].
Check settings	Check the current service settings.

Setting incoming notification on roaming

1 **From the Home screen, tap , then tap .**

2 **Tap [Call settings]▶[Roaming settings].**

3 **Tap [Incoming notification on roaming].**
- Select items you want to use.

Activate incoming call notification	Tap [OK] to activate roaming incoming call notification.
Deactiv. incoming call notification	Tap [OK] to deactivate roaming incoming call notification.
Check settings	Check the current service settings.

Setting roaming guidance

1 **From the Home screen, tap , then tap .**

2 **Tap [Call settings]▶[Roaming settings].**

3 **Tap [Roaming guidance].**
- Select items you want to use.

Activate roaming guidance	Tap [OK] to activate roaming guidance.
Deactivate roaming guidance	Tap [OK] to deactivate roaming guidance.
Check settings	Check the current service settings.

Setting international dial assistance

1 **From the Home screen, tap , then tap .**

2 **Tap [Call settings]▶[Roaming settings].**

3 **Tap [International dial assist].**
- Select items you want to use.

Auto conversion	International prefix or country code is automatically added.
Country code	Tap [OK] to select a country code which will be used for auto conversion.
International prefix	Tap [OK] to select an international prefix which will be used for auto conversion.

Settings Network service (overseas)

Set network service such as voice mail from overseas.

- If you make the settings overseas, you are charged a call fee to Japan from the country you stay.
- For some overseas network operators, settings may not be made.

1 From the Home screen, tap , then tap .

2 Tap [Call settings]▶[Roaming settings].

3 Tap [Network service].

- Select items you want to use. You need to set "Remote access" to activate.

Voicemail (charged)	Activate Voicemail (roaming)	Tap [OK].*
	Deactivate Voicemail (roaming)	Tap [OK].*
	Play Voicemail message (roaming)	Tap [OK]. After this step, follow the voice prompts to play the message.
	Voicemail settings (roaming)	Tap [OK].*
	Voicemail ring time (roaming)	Tap [OK].*
Incoming call notific. (charged)		Tap [OK].*
Caller ID request (charged)		Tap [OK].*
Roaming guidance (charged)		Tap [OK].*
Remote operation (charged)		Tap [OK].*
Call forwarding (charged)	Activate call forwarding	Tap [OK].*
	Deactivate call forwarding	Tap [OK].*
	Check settings	Tap [OK].*

* Follow the voice prompts to operate.

Optional and related devices

A variety of commercially available optional devices allows you to expand the terminal's capabilities by supporting a wide range of purpose, including personal and business uses.
Some accessories are only available in some areas.
For details, please contact a sales outlet such as docomo Shop.
For details on optional devices, see the user's manual of each device.

- Back Cover SO21
- Battery Pack SO08
- 1Seg antenna cable SO01
- Carry Case 02
- Pocket charger 01/02
- AC Adapter cable SO03
- AC Adapter 03
- DC Adapter 03
- Desktop Holder SO14
- AC Adapter Converter Plug Type C01
- Micro USB Cable 01
- Wireless Earphone Set 03
- DriveNet Cradle 01

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting

- First, check if the software update is necessary for the terminal. If necessary, perform the software update (P.250).
- When checking the following items not to improve the state, contact the phone number given in "Repairs" the last page of this manual (in Japanese only) or DOCOMO-specified repair office.

Power supply

Cannot power on the terminal.

- Is the battery pack installed correctly?→P.34
- Check if the battery pack is not run out.→P.35

Charging

Cannot charge the terminal.
(The notification LED does not turn on, or the icon that means charging does not appear.)

- Is the battery pack installed correctly?→P.34
- Check if the adapter's power plug or cigarette lighter plug is correctly inserted to an outlet or cigarette lighter socket.→P.37, P.38

- Check if the adapter cable and the terminal are set correctly.→P.37
- In case of using the AC adapter 03 (optional), is the plug of microUSB cable connected to the terminal and AC adapter or supplied desktop holder correctly?→P.36, P.37
- In case of using the desktop holder, are the terminal's contacts for the desktop holder dirty? Clean the contacts with a dry cotton swab etc. if they are dirty.
- If you execute calls, communications or other function operations for a long time while charging, the terminal may become hot and the battery status icon may not indicate charging (charging stops) or charging may not be completed. In this case, wait until the temperature of the terminal drops and charge again.

The notification LED blinks in red and cannot operate the terminal.

- When the battery level is low, charge the battery.→P.35

Terminal operation

Become hot while operating/charging.

- While calling, depending on the radio wave condition or call duration time, the terminal may become hot. This condition is not abnormal.
- While operating or charging, or if you watch 1Seg, record video etc. for a long time while charging the battery, the terminal, battery pack and adapter may become hot. There is no problem about safety and continue to use it.

The operation time provided by the battery pack is short.

- Is the terminal left for a long time under the state of out of service area?
  Out of service area, a lot of power is consumed to search available radio waves.
- The operating time of the battery pack varies depending on the operating environment and the degradation level of the battery pack.→P.35
- The battery pack is a consumable part. Each time it is charged, time available with each charging reduces.
  If the operation time is too short with fully charged state, purchase a new battery pack of the specified type.

Turning the power off or restarting automatically happens.

- If the terminals of battery pack are dirty, the contact may become poor and the power may shut OFF. Clean the terminals of the battery pack with a dry cotton swab etc. if they are dirty.

Operations are not possible when tapping or pressing keys.

- Check if the power is turned off?→P.39
- Check if you activate the screen lock.→P.146

The screen reacts slowly when you tap or press keys.

- When large amount of data is saved in the terminal or transferring large-size data between the terminal and microSD card, the reactions on the screen may be delayed.

The docomo mini UIM card is not recognized.

- Check if the docomo mini UIM card is attached in the right direction.→P.32

The clock is not on time.

- The clock time may become wrong while turning on the power for a long time. Check if "Automatic date & time" and "Automatic time zone" are set to on and turn the power off and on in a place with strong radio wave conditions.→P.151

The terminal operation is unstable.

- Instability may be caused by applications that you installed after purchasing the terminal. If the symptom is improved when you boot the terminal in safe mode (near default state), uninstalling the installed application may improve the symptom.

  To boot the terminal in safe mode, press and hold [⏻] for over a second with the terminal OFF until XPERIA logo appears, and then touch and hold [◁ ▷] at the bottom until the terminal vibrates once. When safe mode is booted, "Safe mode" is displayed at the lower left of the screen. To exit the safe mode, turn power OFF and then ON.

* Back up the necessary data before using safe mode.

* Some widgets that you created may be removed.

* Safe mode is not a normal booting state. To use ordinarily, exit the safe mode.

Applications cannot be operated properly (applications cannot be activated, or errors occur frequently).

- Are there any applications being disabled? Enable disabled applications, then retry.→P.137

Phone call

Cannot make a call even if you press the dial button.

- Check if you activate the SIM card lock.→P.146
- Check if you activate Airplane mode.→P.124

The ringtone does not sound.

- Is the call alert volume of volume setting set to silent?→P.130

- Check if the silent mode is active.→P.131
- Is the ring time for Voice Mail service or Call Forwarding Service "0 Sec."?→P.91
- Check if you set call rejection.→P.91

Calls are not connected.

(Even when moving "圏外 (out of service area)" does not disappear, or although radio waves are enough, making/receiving calls is unavailable.)

- Turn the power OFF and ON, or remove and attach docomo mini UIM card.→P.32, P.34, P.39
- Due to the nature of radio waves, making/receiving calls may be unavailable even when "not out of service area" or " " appears on the display for the radio wave condition". Move to the other place and call again.
- Due to the crossing of radio waves, at the crowded public places, calls/mails are crossed and the connection status may not be good. Move to other place or call again at other time.

Display

The display is dim.

- Check if the backlight time-out is set.→P.132
- Check if the brightness of screen is changed.→P.132
- Check if you set Power Saver.→P.135
- Check if you cover the Proximity sensor with sticker etc.→P.30
- When the temperature of the terminal becomes high while using, the display may become darker. It is not abnormal.

Sound

During a voice call, the distant party's voice is hard to listen to or too loud.

- Check if the listening volume of the sound volume setting is changed.→P.89

Display data

Images or ringtones set in each feature do not work and the terminal operates in the default data.

- Is the inserted docomo mini UIM card the same one that is set when the images or ringtones are obtained?

Mail

Mail is not received automatically.

- Check if you set "Inbox check frequency" in Account settings to "Manual".→P.109

Camera

Still images and video taken with the camera are blurred.

- Check if clouds or dirt attach to the lens of camera.
- To shoot a portrait image, use the face detection function.→P.200

- Shoot using shake reducing function.→P.193, P.198
- To shoot a close object, use "Superior auto" for the capturing mode.→P.188

1Seg

Watching 1Seg is unavailable.

- Are you out of terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service area or in a place where airwave is weak?
- Is channel set?→P.177

Cannot hear sound.

- Is Stereo Headset with Microphone removed from 1Seg antenna cable SO01 when watching 1Seg using the Stereo Headset with Microphone (Sample)?→P.177

Osaifu-Keitai

Osaifu-Keitai function is unavailable.

- When removing the battery pack or activating Omakase Lock, Osaifu-Keitai functions are unavailable regardless of the NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock settings.
- Check if NFC/Osaifu-Keitai is locked.→P.173
- Check if you place mark of the terminal over an IC card reader?→P.173

International roaming

Cannot use the terminal overseas.

■ When antenna mark is displayed

- Do you subscribe WORLD WING? Check if you subscribe WORLD WING.

■ Out of service area indicator appears

- Check if you are out of the international roaming service area or in an area with poor signal strength. Check if the service area and network operator are available, referring to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.
- Change the network settings or overseas network operator settings.
  Set "Search mode" to "Automatic" in "Service providers".
  Set "Network Mode" to "LTE (preferred)/WCDMA/GSM".→P.232, P.233, P.234
- Turning off the terminal and then turning on again may work for the restoration.→P.39

Cannot perform data communication overseas.

- Mark "Data roaming".→P.234

The terminal suddenly became unavailable while using overseas.

- Check if usage amount exceeds the limit of maximum charges for use.
  For use of "International roaming (WORLD WING)", the limit of maximum charges for use is set in advance. If exceeding the limit of maximum charges for use, pay the charges.

Cannot receive calls overseas.

- Is "Restricting incoming calls" set to "Activate restricting"?→P.236

No caller ID is notified/A notified caller ID is different from that of the caller/ Functions for using contents saved in phonebook or those using Caller ID notification do not operate.

- Even if a caller notifies its caller ID, it is not displayed on the terminal unless the network or network operator notifies it. And a different caller ID may be notified depending on the network or network operator you use.

Data management

Data transfer is not performed.

- Check if USB hub is used. If you use USB hub, operations may not be performed correctly.

Data saved in microSD card is not displayed.

- Remove the microSD card and insert it again.→P.33

When trying to display an image, "×" appears instead of it. Or "×" appears for the demo play or the preview function.

- "×" may appear instead of destroyed image data.

Bluetooth function

The terminal cannot be connected to a Bluetooth communication device/A Bluetooth communication device cannot be found from the terminal.

- Make Bluetooth communication device (commercial item) registering stand-by state and then register the device on the terminal. If you delete already registered device and register the device again as a new device, delete the registrations on both Bluetooth communication device (commercial item) and the terminal and then perform registration of the devices. →P.162

Calls cannot be made from the terminal connecting to external device such as car navigation or handsfree device.

- If calls are made several times when the other party does not answer or is out of service, the call to this number may be disabled. In this case, turn terminal off and on.

Map/GPS

Cannot set AUTO-GPS service information.

- Check if the battery level is low and AUTO-GPS function is stopped.
  If AUTO-GPS is stopped by "Lower-power operation settings", AUTO-GPS service information cannot be set. In this case, set "Lower-power operation settings" to "Not suspend" or charge the battery.→P.35, P.139
- Check if "AUTO-GPS operation settings" is marked.→P.139

Error messages

No service

- The terminal is out of service area, or the received signal is too weak. Move to a location where radio signal can be reached.
- The docomo mini UIM card is not working properly.
  Insert the docomo mini UIM card in another terminal. If this works, it is probably the terminal that is causing the problem. In this case, contact "Repairs" on the last page of this manual (in Japanese only).
  Removing and inserting docomo mini UIM card may improve the problem.

Normal calls are restricted by access control.

Appears when normal voice call service is hard to receive because communication lines are busy.

Emergency calls are restricted by access control.

Appears when emergency voice call service is hard to receive because communication lines are busy.

Calls are restricted by access control.

Appears when normal/emergency voice call service is hard to receive because communication lines are busy.

● **SIM card is locked**
Enter your PIN code (P.145) correctly.

● **SIM card is PUK-locked**
Enter your PUK (Personal Unblocking Key) (P.146) correctly.

● **PIN lock cancellation code is locked.**
PIN lock cancellation code is locked. Please contact a docomo Shop.

● **The phone storage is full**
There is no memory space. Delete unnecessary applications (P.137) to obtain memory space.

Smartphone Anshin Remote Support

By sharing screens of your terminal with NTT DOCOMO, you can receive technical support to make settings (in Japanese only).

- This service is not available when your docomo mini UIM card is not inserted, during international roaming, or in Airplane mode.
- Smartphone Anshin Remote Support is a service requiring subscription.
- Some operations and settings are not supported.
- For details on Smartphone Anshin Remote Support, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

1 Call スマートフォン遠隔サポートセンター (Remote support center for smartphone) (0120-783-360, Business hours: 9:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m., open all year round).

2 From the Home screen, tap , then tap [遠隔サポート (Remote support)].

- When you use for the first time, agree to "ソフトウェア使用許諾書 (License Agreement)".

3 Enter connection number notified by DOCOMO.

4 Remote support starts when you are connected.

Warranty and After Sales Services

Warranty

- Make sure that the warranty is received with the terminal upon purchase. Check to be sure that "販売店名・お買い上げ日 (the name of the retailer, date of purchase)", and other items have been filled out on the warranty before storing it in a safe place. If any necessary information is not provided, immediately contact the retailer and request to complete the warranty. The terminal comes with a year's free warranty starting from the date of purchase.
- Specifications of this product and its accessories are subject to change for improvement without prior notice.
- Data saved in the Contacts etc. may be changed/lost due to the trouble/repairs or handling of the terminal. DOCOMO recommends making a copy of the Phonebook data etc., in case.

* You can save Phonebook data in a microSD card inserted to the terminal.

* Data such as phonebook entries can be backed up to Data center using Data Security Service (subscription is required).

After Sales Services

If you have problems with the terminal

Before asking repair, see "Troubleshooting" (P.239) in this manual to check the problem. If the problem still persists, contact "Repairs" on the last page (in Japanese only).

If repair is required resultingly

Bring the terminal to the DOCOMO-specified repair office. However, it must be taken during business hours of the repair office. Make sure to bring a warranty card with the product when you visit the shop. Note that repair may take some days depending on the problem.

Within the warranty period

- We repair the terminal free of charge based on the terms documented in the warranty.
- When requesting a repair, make sure to bring the warranty card with the terminal. Repair requests that are not accompanied by the warranty or that involve malfunction and damage due to incorrect handling by the owner (damage of liquid crystal, connector, etc.) will only be repaired at the owner's expense, even if the warranty period is still effective.
- Malfunction due to use of devices and consumable parts other than those specified by DOCOMO will only be repaired at the owner's expense, even if the warranty period is still effective.

Note that repair may be refused in the following cases:

- When the terminal has corrosion due to wet by liquid, condensation, perspiration, etc. or the internal circuit board is damaged or deformed (we may not be able to repair when the microUSB jack, headset jack, liquid crystal, etc. is damaged or the frame itself is cracked) based on the result of our examination.
  - Even if repair is possible, it will be done at the owner's expense, as this type of corrosion or damage is not covered by the warranty.

If the warranty period expires

We will repair the terminal at the owner's expense.

Parts stock period

The functional parts necessary to repair the terminal will be basically available for a minimum of six years after the manufacture is discontinued.

However, depending on the defective portion, repair may not be possible because of a shortage of repair parts. Note that repair may still be possible depending on the defective portion even if the stock period has expired. Contact "Repairs" on the last page (in Japanese only).

Precautions

- **Never modify the terminal or accessories.**
  - Doing so may result in fire, injuries or malfunctions.
  - The modified terminal may be repaired only if the owner agrees on that all the modified parts are restored to the original conditions.

    However, repairs may be refused depending on the modifications.

    The following cases may be considered as modifications.
    - Put a seal etc. on the liquid crystal or key part.
    - Glued decorations on the terminal using adhesion bond, etc.
    - Change the parts such as exterior to other than DOCOMO standard parts.
  - Malfunction and damage due to modifications will be repaired at the owner's expense, even if the warranty period is still effective.
- **The model plate must not be removed from the terminal.**

  The model plate certifies that the terminal satisfies technical standards. It should be noted that if the plate is removed or is replaced with a different plate, and the original model plate cannot be verified, it may disqualify the unit from repairs due to not being able to determine the technical standards of that particular phone.
- **Note that the settings and other information may be reset (cleared) as a result of malfunction, repair or other handling. In this case, make the settings again.**
- **After the repair, Wi-Fi MAC address or Bluetooth address may be changed regardless of the repaired parts.**
- **A material that generates a magnetic field is used in the following parts of the terminal.**

  Do not hold an object that is easily affected by magnetism, such as a cash card, close to the terminal. You may not be able to use the card any more.

  Where it is used: Speaker, earpiece

- The terminal is waterproof. If inside of the terminal gets wet or moist, however, turn the power off, remove the battery pack immediately, and bring the terminal to a repair office as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of the terminal.

Precautions on memory dial (Phonebook function) and downloaded data

Note that data you created or data you retrieved or downloaded from sources other than your terminal may be changed or lost when you change the model or have repairs done to the terminal. DOCOMO shall have no liability for any change or loss of any kind. Under some circumstances, DOCOMO may replace your terminal with its equivalent instead of repairing it.

Updating software

You can update the terminal to the most recent software for optimal performance and to get the latest enhancements.

❖Note

- When the terminal is connected to the Internet using the mobile network connection, data communication fee is applied.
- Make sure you back up and save all data contained in the terminal before you start updating the terminal.
- For the first time activating the terminal after software update, the operation may be slower from several minutes to several ten minutes due to data update. The required time varies by the data in the terminal. Do not turn the power off until usual operation speed comebacks.

❖Information

- For details on the software update, see the following website.
  http://www.sonymobile.co.jp/support/ (In Japanese only)

Setting notification of Software update

You can set to be notified of updating software.

1 From the Home screen, tap and tap [Settings]▶[About phone]▶[Software update].

2 Tap and [Settings].

3 Mark "Notifications".

- To change the notification tone, tap [Notification tone], then tap notification tone you want to change, and then tap [Done].

❖Information

- If you mark "Notification vibration" in Step 3, software update is notified by vibration.

Downloading software updates wirelessly

Downloading software to update

Software can be downloaded wirelessly directly from your terminal via the Internet by using mobile network connection or by using a Wi-Fi network connection.

1 From the Home screen, tap and tap [Settings]▶[About phone]▶[Software update].

2 Tap "System" tab and then .

- The terminal searches for software updates.

❖Information

- You can also search the software update in the following operation.
  From the Home screen, tap and , then tap [Settings]▶[About phone]▶[Software update]▶"System" tab and then tap .
- "New apps"/"Updates" tabs in the Update Center screen are not available because the services are not provided in Japan.

❖Note

- For software update via mobile network, a high packet communication charge will be applied because of a large amount data communication. For this reason, subscription of packet flat-rate service is highly recommended.
- While you are using roaming service overseas, you cannot search for or download update software through the mobile network.

Downloading the latest software update automatically

Search the latest software update automatically on regular basis. If software update is searched, software is downloaded automatically and appears on the status bar.

1 From the Home screen, tap and tap [Settings]▶[About phone]▶[Software update].

2 Tap and [Settings].

3 Tap [Allow automatic downloads], read the notes and tap [Agree].

- "Allow automatic downloads" is marked.

❖Note

- Note that if you tap from the Home screen, then tap [Settings]▶[About phone]▶[Software Update] and tap then [Settings]▶[Preferred data traffic]▶[Via mobile network/Wi-Fi], a Wi-Fi connection automatically switches to mobile network communications when the Wi-Fi connection is unstable and packet communication fee may apply.
- Note that packet communication fee may apply for searching automatically.

Connecting to a PC and updating

You can update software by using PC Companion that can be installed into a PC from the terminal.

❖Information

- To install PC Companion on a PC, an Internet connection is required.

When PC Companion is not installed on your PC

1 Connect the terminal to a PC using a microUSB cable.

2 When "PC Companion software" screen appears on the terminal, tap [Install].

- Installer of PC Companion starts on the PC.

3 Follow the onscreen instructions on the PC to install.

- After installation, PC Companion starts on the PC. If further software update is searched, it is automatically notified. Follow the onscreen instructions on the PC.

When PC Companion is installed on your PC

1 Check if PC Companion is activated on the PC. If not, activate PC Companion from the Start menu.

2 Connect the terminal to a PC using a microUSB cable.

3 Follow the onscreen instructions on the PC.

- If available software update is found, it is automatically notified.

Main specification

The terminal

Product name		SO-01E
Size		Height approx. 129mm× Width approx. 65mm× Thickest part approx. 8.7mm (thickest part approx. 10.8mm)
Weight		Approx. 120g (with battery)
Storage		ROM 16GB RAM 1GB
External storage		microSD card of up to 2GB microSDHC card of up to 32GB (as of October, 2012)
Continuous stand-by time	FOMA/3G	Approx. 480 hours (stationary)
	GSM	Approx. 340 hours (stationary)
	LTE	Approx. 350 hours (stationary)
Continuous call time	FOMA/3G	Approx. 460 min.
	GSM	Approx. 440 min.
Charging time	AC Adapter 03	Approx. 160 min. (for Desktop Holder SO14 combination use : approx. 170 min.)
	DC Adapter 03	Approx. 180 min.
1Seg watching time		Approx. 300 min.

Display	Type	TFT16,777,216 colors
	Size	Approx. 4.3 in.
	Number of dots	Horizon 720 dots× Vertical 1280 dots
Image pickup device	Type	Camera : Backside-illuminated CMOS Front camera : CMOS
	Size	Camera : 1/3.0 in. Front camera : 1/13.0 in.
Camera pixels		Camera : Effective pixels : Approx. 13,000,000 pixels (Recorded pixels : Approx. 12,800,000 pixels) Front camera : Effective pixels : Approx. 310,000 pixels (Recorded pixels : Approx. 310,000 pixels)
Digital zoom		Camera : Max. approx. 16x (41 levels) Front camera : —
Still image capture size		Camera : 4128×3096 (13MP 4:3) 3920×2940 (12MP 4:3) 3920×2204 (9MP 16:9) 2592×1944 (5MP 4:3) 1920×1080 (2MP 16:9) 640×480 (VGA) Front camera : 640×480 (VGA)

Video recording size		Video camera : 1920×1080 (Full HD) 1280×720 (HD 720p) 640×480 (VGA) Front video camera : 640×480 (VGA) 320×240 (QVGA)
Frame rate		Max. 30 fps
Wireless LAN		Compliant with IEEE802.11a*1/b/g/n*1 (Corresponding frequency band to IEEE802.11n : 2.4GHz/5GHz)
Bluetooth	Supported Bluetooth version	Compliant with Bluetooth standard Ver. 4.0*2
	Radio power	Bluetooth standard Power Class 1
	Available communication distance*3	Within approx. 10 m
	Supported Bluetooth profile*4	HFP, HSP, OPP, SPP, HID, A2DP, AVRCP, PBAP, PAN, HDP, PXP, DID

*1 Not available when docomo mini UIM card is not inserted.

*2 It is confirmed that the terminal and all Bluetooth devices are compliant with Bluetooth standards designated by Bluetooth SIG, and they are authenticated. However, procedures may differ or data transfer may not be possible depending on the device's characteristics or specifications.

*3 May vary by the signal status and/or whether there is an interference between communications devices.

*4 Bluetooth standards for Bluetooth device connection procedure according to the product's applications.

- Continuous call time is an estimate of the operation time for calling when radio signal reception is normal.
- Continuous stand-by time is an estimate of the stand-by time when radio signal reception is normal.
  In certain circumstances, the stand-by time may drop to as low as half the time shown due to the battery charge, function settings, temperature, or radio signal reception in the area (no reception or weak).
- A use of the Internet reduces the actual call (communication)/stand-by time.
  Composing messages or activating the camera or applications also reduces call (communication)/stand-by time even if you do not call or use the Internet.
- Stationary continuous stand-by time is the estimated average operation time when radio signal reception is normal.
- Charging time is an estimate of the time required to charge a completely empty battery pack.

Battery Pack

Product name	Battery Pack SO08
Battery type	Lithium Ion Battery
Voltage	DC3.7V
Current	1700mAh

File format

The terminal supports the display or playback of the following file format:

Type	File format
Sound	WAV (PCM, G.711) (.wav), AAC (.3gp, .m4a, .mp4), AAC+ (.3gp, .m4a, .mp4), eAAC+ (.3gp, .m4a, .mp4), MP3 (.mp3), AMR-NB (.3gp), AMR-WB (.3gp), MIDI (SP-MIDI/GM/GML (.mid), XMF (.xmf), Mobile XMF 1.0 (.mxmf), RTTTL/RTX (.rtttl, .rtx), OTA (.ota), iMelody (.imy)), Ogg Vorbis (.ogg), FLAC (.flac), PIFF (.isma)
Still image*	JPEG (.jpeg, .jpg), GIF (.gif), PNG (.png), BMP (.bmp), WEBP (.webp)
Video	H263 (.3gp, .mp4), H264 AVC (.3gp, .mp4), MPEG-4 SP (.3gp), VP8 (.webm, .mkv), Xvid (.avi), Quicktime (.mov), PIFF (.ismv)

* Still images are saved in JPEG format when shot with Camera in the terminal.

Numbers of still images (Estimation)

Savable number of shot images to the internal storage	Up to approx. 355677 images
Savable number of shot images to a microSD card (1GB)	Up to approx. 41940 images

* Shot images with a resolution of 640×480 (VGA).

Time length of shooting video (Estimation)

Savable time of recording to the internal storage	Per video : Up to approx. 269 min. In total : Up to approx. 545 min.
Savable time of recording to a microSD card (1GB)	Per video : Up to approx. 67 min. In total : Up to approx. 67 min.

* Time of recording with a resolution of 640×480 (VGA).

Specific Absorption Rate of Mobile Phone, etc.

Mobile phone : GSM/GPRS/EDGE 850/900/1800/1900 & UMTS/HSPA B1/5/6/19 & LTE B1/19/21

Specific Absorption Rate of Mobile Phone

This model SO-01E mobile phone complies with Japanese technical regulations and international guidelines regarding exposure to radio waves.

This mobile phone was designed in observance of Japanese technical regulations regarding exposure to radio waves[*1] and limits to exposure to radio waves recommended by a set of equivalent international guidelines. This set of international guidelines was set out by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP), which is in collaboration with the World Health Organization (WHO), and the permissible limits include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health condition.

The technical regulations and international guidelines set out limits for radio waves as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR, which is the value of absorbed energy in any 10 grams of tissue over a 6-minute period. The SAR limit for mobile phones is 2.0 W/kg. The highest SAR value for this mobile phone when tested for use at the ear is 0.94 W/kg. There may be slight differences between the SAR levels for each product, but they all satisfy the limit.
This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum required to reach the network. Therefore in general, the closer you are to a base station, the lower the power output of the device.

This mobile phone can be used in positions other than against your ear. This mobile phone satisfies the international guidelines when used with a carrying case or a wearable accessory approved by NTT DOCOMO or the manufacturer[*2]. In case you are not using the approved accessory, please use a product that does not contain any metals, and one that positions the mobile phone at least 1.5 cm away from your body.

The World Health Organization has stated that "a large number of studies have been

performed over the last two decades to assess whether mobile phones pose a potential health risk. To date, no adverse health effects have been established as being caused by mobile phone use."
Please refer to the WHO website if you would like more detailed information.
http://www.who.int/docstore/peh-emf/publications/facts_press/fact_english.htm
Please refer to the websites listed below if you would like more detailed information regarding SAR.
Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications Website:
http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/sys/ele/index.htm
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses Website:
http://www.arib-emf.org/index02.html (in Japanese only)
NTT DOCOMO, INC. Website:
http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/sar/
Sony Mobile Communications Japan, Inc. Website:
http://www.sonymobile.co.jp/product/SAR/ (in Japanese only)

*1 Technical regulations are defined by the Ministerial Ordinance Related to Radio Law (Article 14-2 of Radio Equipment Regulations).

*2 Regarding the method of measuring SAR when using mobile phones in positions other than against the ear, international standards (IEC62209-2) were set in March 2010. On the other hand, technical regulation is currently being deliberated on by national council. (As of October, 2011)

Radio Wave Exposure and Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) Information

United States

THIS PHONE MODEL HAS BEEN CERTIFIED IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE GOVERNMENT'S REQUIREMENTS FOR EXPOSURE TO RADIO WAVES.
The SO-01E mobile phones have been designed to comply with applicable safety requirements for exposure to radio waves. Your wireless phone is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed to not exceed the limits* of exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by governmental authorities. These limits establish permitted levels of RF energy for the general population. The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by international scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The

standards include a safety margin designed to assure the safety of all individuals, regardless of age and health.
The radio wave exposure guidelines employ a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). Tests for SAR are conducted using standardized methods with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all used frequency bands.
While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phone models, they are all designed to meet the relevant guidelines for exposure to radio waves. For more information on SAR, please refer to the safe and efficient use chapter in the User Guide.
The highest SAR value as reported to the authorities for this phone model when tested for use by the ear is 0.94 W/kg*, and when worn on the body is 0.81 W/kg* for speech and 1.35 W/kg* for data calls. For body-worn operation, the phone has been tested when positioned a minimum of 15 mm from the body without any metal parts in the vicinity of the phone or when properly used with an appropriate Sony Mobile Communications AB accessory and worn on the body.
For devices which include "WiFi hotspot" functionality, SAR measurements for the device operating in WiFi hotspot mode were taken using a separation distance of 10 mm. Use of third-party accessories may result in different SAR levels than those reported.

** Before a phone model is available for sale to the public in the US, it must be tested and certified by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) that it does not exceed the limit established by the government-adopted requirement for safe exposure*. The tests are performed in positions and locations (i.e., by the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this phone model with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF exposure guidelines. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones, all mobile phones granted an FCC equipment authorization meet the government requirement for safe exposure. SAR information on this phone model is on file at the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of http://www.fcc.gov/oet/ea/fccid/ after searching on FCC ID PY7PM-0070. Additional information on SAR can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website at http://www.ctia.org/.

* In the United States, the SAR limit for mobile phones used by the public is 1.6 watts/kilogram (W/kg) averaged over one gram of tissue. The standard incorporates a margin of safety to give additional protection for the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

** This paragraph is only applicable to authorities and customers in the United States.

Europe

This mobile phone model SO-01E has been designed to comply with applicable safety requirements for exposure to radio waves. These requirements are based on scientific guidelines that include safety margins designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The radio wave exposure guidelines employ a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. Tests for SAR are conducted using standardized methods with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all used frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phone models, they are all designed to meet the relevant guidelines for exposure to radio waves.

For more information on SAR, please refer to the safety chapter in the User's Guide.

SAR data information for residents in countries that have adopted the SAR limit recommended by the International Commission of Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP), which is 2 W/kg averaged over ten (10) gram of tissue (for example European Union, Japan, Brazil and New Zealand):

The highest SAR value for this model phone tested by Sony Mobile Communications AB for use at the ear is 0.94 W/kg (10g).

Guidelines for Safe and Efficient Use

Please follow these guidelines. Failure to do so might entail a potential health risk or product malfunction. If in doubt as to its proper function, have the product checked by a certified service partner before charging or using it.

Recommendations for care and safe use of our products

- Handle with care and keep in a clean and dust-free place.
- **Warning!** May explode if disposed of in fire.
- Do not expose to liquid or moisture or excess humidity.
- For optimum performance, the product should not be operated in temperatures below +5°C (+41°F) or above +35°C (+95°F). Do not expose the battery to temperatures above +60°C (+140°F).

- Do not expose to flames or lit tobacco products.
- Do not drop, throw or try to bend the product.

- Do not paint or attempt to disassemble or modify the product. Only Sony Mobile Communications AB authorised personnel should perform service.

- Consult with authorised medical staff and the instructions of the medical device manufacturer before using the product near pacemakers or other medical devices or equipment.
- Discontinue use of electronic devices, or disable the radio transmitting functionality of the device, where required or requested to do so.
- Do not use where a potentially explosive atmosphere exists.
- Do not place the product, or install wireless equipment, in the area above an air bag in a car.
- **Caution:** Cracked or broken displays may create sharp edges or splinters that could be harmful upon contact.
- Do not use the Bluetooth Headset in positions where it is uncomfortable or will be subject to pressure.

Children

Warning! Keep out of the reach of children. Do not allow children to play with mobile phones or accessories. They could hurt themselves or others. Products may contain small parts that could become detached and create a choking hazard.

Power supply (Charger)

Connect the charger to power sources as marked on the product. Do not use outdoors or in damp areas. Do not alter or subject the cord to damage or stress. Unplug the unit before cleaning it. Never alter the plug. If it does not fit into the outlet, have a proper outlet installed by an electrician. When a power supply is connected there is a small drain of power. To avoid this small energy waste, disconnect the power supply when the product is fully charged. Use of charging devices that are not Sony Mobile Communications AB branded may pose increased safety risks.

Battery

New or idle batteries can have short-term reduced capacity. Fully charge the battery before initial use. Use for the intended purpose only. Charge the battery in temperatures between +5°C (+41°F) and +35°C (+95°F). Do not put the battery into your mouth. Do not let the battery contacts touch another metal object. Turn off the product before removing the battery. Performance depends on temperatures, signal strength, usage patterns, features selected and voice or data transmissions. Only Sony Mobile Communications AB service partners should remove or replace built-in batteries. Use of batteries that are not Sony Mobile Communications AB branded may pose increased safety risks. Replace the battery only with another Sony Mobile Communications AB battery that has been qualified with the product per the standard IEEE-1725. Use of an unqualified battery may present a risk of fire, explosion, leakage or other hazard.

Personal medical devices

Mobile phones may affect implanted medical equipment. Reduce risk of interference by keeping a minimum distance of 22 cm (8.7 inches) between the phone and the device. Use the phone at your right ear. Do not carry the phone in your breast pocket. Turn off the phone if you suspect interference. For all medical devices, consult a physician and the manufacturer.

Driving

Some vehicle manufacturers forbid the use of phones in their vehicles unless a handsfree kit with an external antenna supports the installation. Check with the vehicle manufacturer's representative to be sure that the mobile phone or Bluetooth handsfree will not affect the electronic systems in the vehicle. Full attention should be given to driving at all times and local laws and regulations restricting the use of wireless devices while driving must be observed.

GPS/Location based functions

Some products provide GPS/Location based functions. Location determining functionality is provided "As is" and "With all faults". Sony Mobile Communications AB does not make any representation or warranty as to the accuracy of such location information.

Use of location-based information by the device may not be uninterrupted or error free and may additionally be dependent on network service availability. Please note that functionality may be reduced or prevented in certain environments such as building interiors or areas adjacent to buildings.

Caution: Do not use GPS functionality in a manner which causes distraction from driving.

Emergency calls

Calls cannot be guaranteed under all conditions. Never rely solely upon mobile phones for essential communication. Calls may not be possible in all areas, on all networks, or when certain network services and/or phone features are used.

Antenna

Use of antenna devices not marketed by Sony Mobile Communications AB could damage the phone, reduce performance, and produce SAR levels above the established limits. Do not cover the antenna with your hand as this affects call quality, power levels and can shorten talk and standby times.

Radio Frequency (RF) exposure and Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

When the phone or Bluetooth handsfree is turned on, it emits low levels of radio frequency energy. International safety guidelines have been developed through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. These guidelines establish permitted levels of radio wave exposure. The guidelines include a safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons and to account for any variations in measurements.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) is used to measure radio frequency energy absorbed by the body when using a mobile phone. The SAR value is determined at the highest certified power level in laboratory conditions, but because the phone is designed to use the minimum power necessary to access the chosen network, the actual SAR level can be well below this value. There is no proof of difference in safety based on difference in SAR value.

Products with radio transmitters sold in the US must be certified by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC). When required, tests are performed when the phone is placed at the ear and when worn on the body. For body-worn operation, the phone has been tested when positioned a minimum of 15 mm from the body without any metal parts in the vicinity of the phone or when properly used with an appropriate Sony Mobile Communications AB accessory and worn on the body.

For more information about SAR and radio frequency exposure, go to: *http://www.sonymobile.co.jp/product/SAR/* (in Japanese only).

Flight mode

Bluetooth and WLAN functionality, if available in the device, can be enabled in Flight mode but may be prohibited onboard aircraft or in other areas where radio transmissions are prohibited. In such environments, please seek proper authorisation before enabling Bluetooth or WLAN functionality even in Flight mode.

Malware

Malware (short for malicious software) is software that can harm the mobile phone or other computers. Malware or harmful applications can include viruses, worms, spyware, and other unwanted programs. While the device does employ security measures to resist such efforts, Sony Mobile Communications AB does not warrant or represent that the device will be impervious to the introduction of malware. You can however reduce the risk of malware attacks by using care when downloading content or accepting applications, refraining from opening or responding to messages from unknown sources, using trustworthy services to access the Internet, and only downloading content to the mobile phone from known, reliable sources.

Accessories

Use only Sony Mobile Communications AB branded original accessories and certified service partners. Sony Mobile Communications AB does not test third-party accessories. Accessories may influence RF exposure, radio performance, loudness, electric safety and other areas. Third-party accessories and parts may pose a risk to your health or safety or decrease performance.

Disposal of old electrical and electronic equipment

Electronic equipment and batteries should not be included as household waste but should be left at an appropriate collection point for recycling. This helps prevent potential negative consequences for the environment and human health. Check local regulations by contacting your local city office, your household waste disposal service, the shop where you purchased the product or calling a Sony Mobile Communications AB Contact Center. Do not attempt to remove internal batteries. Internal batteries shall be removed only by a waste treatment facility or trained service professional.

Disposing of the battery

Check local regulations or call a Sony Mobile Communications AB Contact Center for information. Never use municipal waste.

Memory card

If the product comes complete with a removable memory card, it is generally compatible with the handset purchased but may not be compatible with other devices or the capabilities of their memory cards. Check other devices for compatibility before purchase or use. If the product is equipped with a memory card reader, check memory card compatibility before purchase or use.

Memory cards are generally formatted prior to shipping. To reformat the memory card, use a compatible device. Do not use the standard operating system format when formatting the memory card on a PC. For details, refer to the operating instructions of the device or contact customer support.

Warning!

If the device requires an adapter for insertion into the handset or another device, do not insert the card directly without the required adapter.

Precautions on memory card use

- Do not expose the memory card to moisture.
- Do not touch terminal connections with your hand or any metal object.
- Do not strike, bend, or drop the memory card.
- Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the memory card.
- Do not use or store the memory card in humid or corrosive locations or in excessive heat such as a closed car in summer, in direct sunlight or near a heater, etc.
- Do not press or bend the end of the memory card adapter with excessive force.
- Do not let dirt, dust, or foreign objects get into the insert port of any memory card adapter.
- Check you have inserted the memory card correctly.
- Insert the memory card as far as it will go into any memory card adapter needed. The memory card may not operate properly unless fully inserted.
- We recommend that you make a backup copy of important data. We are not responsible for any loss or damage to content you store on the memory card.
- Recorded data may be damaged or lost when you remove the memory card or memory card adapter, turn off the power while formatting, reading or writing data, or use the memory card in locations subject to static electricity or high electrical field emissions.

Protection of personal information

Erase personal data before disposing of the product. To delete data, perform a master reset. Deleting data from the phone memory does not ensure that it cannot be recovered. Sony Mobile Communications AB does not warrant against recovery of information and does not assume responsibility for disclosure of any information even after a master reset.

Loudness warning!

Avoid volume levels that may be harmful to your hearing.

FCC Statement for the USA

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any change or modification not expressly approved by Sony Mobile Communications AB may void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Declaration of Conformity for SO-01E

CE 0682 !

The Product "SO-01E" is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2. The Declaration of Conformity can be found on http://www.sonymobile.co.jp/product/SAR/doc/ (in Japanese only).

End User Licence Agreement

End User Licence Agreement

Software delivered with this device and its media is owned by Sony Mobile Communications AB, and/or its affiliated companies and its suppliers and licensors.
Sony Mobile grants you a non-exclusive limited licence to use the Software solely in conjunction with the Device on which it is installed or delivered. Ownership of the Software is not sold, transferred or otherwise conveyed.
Do not use any means to discover the source code or any component of the Software, reproduce and distribute the Software, or modify the Software. You are entitled to transfer rights and obligations to the Software to a third party, solely together with the Device with which you received the Software, provided the third party agrees in writing to be bound by the terms of this Licence.
This licence exists throughout the useful life of this Device. It can be terminated by transferring your rights to the Device to a third party in writing.
Failure to comply with any of these terms and conditions will terminate the licence immediately.
Sony Mobile and its third party suppliers and licensors retain all rights, title and interest in and to the Software. To the extent that the Software contains material or code of a third party, such third parties shall be beneficiaries of these terms.
This licence is governed by the laws of Sweden. When applicable, the foregoing applies to statutory consumer rights.
In the event Software accompanying or provided in conjunction with your device is provided with additional terms and conditions, such provisions shall also govern your possession and usage of the Software.

About Open Source Software

About Open Source Software

This product includes certain open source or other software originating from third parties that is subject to the GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Library/Lesser General Public License (LGPL) and different and/or additional copyright licenses, disclaimers and notices. The exact terms of GPL, LGPL and some other licenses, disclaimers and notices are reproduced in the about box in this product and are also available at http://opensource.sonymobile.com.

Sony Mobile offers to provide source code of software licensed under the GPL or LGPL or some other open source licenses allowing source code distribution to you on a CD-ROM for a charge covering the cost of performing such distribution, such as the cost of media, shipping and handling, upon written request to Sony Mobile Communications AB, Open Source Software Management, Nya Vattentornet, SE-221 88 Lund, Sweden. This offer is valid for a period of three (3) years from the date of the distribution of this product by Sony Mobile.

Export Controls and Regulations

This product and its accessories may be covered and controlled by Japan's export control regulations ("Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Law" and related laws and regulations). If you wish to export this product and/or its accessories, you must complete the necessary procedures at your own responsibility and cost. For details about the procedure, contact the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry.

Intellectual Property Right

About the Copyright and Portrait rights

Copyrighted contents you recorded or obtained from sites or Internet home pages using this product by downloading or other means, such as documents, images, music data, software, are prohibited from reproduction, transformation and transmission over public lines without consent of the copyright holders, unless intended for personal use or any other purpose permitted by law.
Note that some performances, shows, and exhibitions may not allow photography, movie shooting, or sound recording even for personal use.
You should also refrain from taking a picture of other people and disclosing it by such means as posting it on a site on the Internet without their consent because of possible infringement of their right of portrait.

Trademarks

The company names and product names appearing in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

- "FOMA", "i-mode", "i-αppli", "Deco-mail", "sp-mode", "WORLD WING", "WORLD CALL", "ToruCa", "mopera", "mopera U", "iD", "Xi" and logo of "ToruCa" are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DOCOMO, INC.
- "Bluetooth" is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc., and Sony Mobile Communications is licensed to use them.

Bluetooth®

- "Wi-Fi" is a registered trademark of Wi-Fi Alliance.
- Wi-Fi Protected Setup and Wi-Fi Protected Setup logos are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance.
- The Wi-Fi Protected Setup Mark is a mark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

Wi Fi® CERTIFIED

- "Catch Phone (Call waiting service)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Rovi, G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are trademarks or registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Rovi Corporation and/or its affiliates.

G-GUIDE MOBILE

- "Xperia" and "Timescape" are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sony Mobile Communications AB.
- "Media Go" is a trademark or registered trademark of Sony Media Software and Services.
- "PlayStation" and "" are trademarks or registered trademarks or Sony Computer Entertainment Inc.

PlayStation™ Certified

- "BRAVIA", "Sony", "Sweep Panorama", "WALKMAN", "xLOUD", "FeliCa", "Reader" and "Clear Phase" are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sony Corporation.
- "POBox" and "POBox" logo are registered trademarks of Sony Computer Science Laboratories, Inc. "POBox" is a co-developed technology of Sony Computer Science Laboratories, Inc. and Sony Mobile Communications Japan, Inc.

POBox®

- microSD logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.
- is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
- is a trademark or registered trademark of NFC Forum, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- "Twitter" is a trademark or registered trademark of Twitter, Inc.
- "Google" and "Google" logo, "Android" and "Android" logo, "Google Play" and "Google Play" logo, "Google Local" and "Google Local" logo, "Google+", "Gmail", "mobile Google Maps", "Google Talk", "Google Latitude", "Google Calendar", "YouTube" and "YouTube" logo and "Picasa" are trademarks or registered trademarks of Google, Inc.
- Facebook and Facebook logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Facebook, Inc.
- mixi and mixi logo are registered trademarks of mixi, Inc.
- DLNA is a trademark or registered trademark of the Digital Living Network Alliance.

dlna CERTIFIED™

- MHL, Mobile High-Definition Link and MHL logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of MHL, LLC.

MHL Mobile High-Definition Link

- "Microsoft", "Windows", "Outlook", "Windows Vista", "Windows Server", "Windows Media" and "ActiveSync" are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

- This product contains technology subject to certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of this technology outside of this product is prohibited without the appropriate license(s) from Microsoft.
- Content owners use Microsoft PlayReady™ content access technology to protect their intellectual property, including copyrighted content. This device uses PlayReady technology to access PlayReady-protected content and/or WMDRM-protected content. If the device fails to properly enforce restrictions on content usage, content owners may require Microsoft to revoke the device's ability to consume PlayReady-protected content. Revocation should not affect unprotected content or content protected by other content access technologies. Content owners may require you to upgrade PlayReady to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.
- This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 visual and AVC patent portfolio license for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer for (i) encoding video in compliance with the MPEG-4 visual standard ("MPEG-4 video") or the AVC standard ("AVC video") and/or (ii) decoding MPEG-4 or AVC video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed by MPEG LA to provide MPEG-4 and/or AVC video. No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use. Additional information including that relating to promotional, internal and commercial uses and licensing may be obtained MPEG LA, L.L.C. (See http://www.mpegla.com). MPEG Layer-3 audio decoding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson.
- Other product and company names mentioned herein may be the trademarks of their respective owners.
  In context, TM and ® mark are omitted.
- Any rights not expressly granted herein are reserved. All other trademarks are property of their respective owners.

SIM unlock

This terminal supports SIM unlock. If you release SIM lock, you can use SIM by a carrier other than NTT DOCOMO.

- The SIM unlock service is provided at a docomo Shop.
- A SIM unlock charge is separately required.
- If you use a SIM other than by DOCOMO, LTE system is not available. Available services and functions will be limited. DOCOMO is not liable to any failures or malfunctions.
- For details of SIM unlock, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

Index

A

About phone 153
Access point
  Block access point change 128
  Initializing 129
  Setting 128
Accessibility 152
Account setting
  Facebook 140
  Google 139
  Removing 142
Accounts & sync 139
  Auto-sync 142
Adjusting sound volume 130
Airplane mode 124
Alarm & clock 223
  Setting alarm 224
Album 205
Application screen 76
  Group 82
  Learning 76
  Recommends 76, 84
  Switching 84
Applications 76, 136
  Adding to Home screen 81
  Managing 136
  Searching 84
  Sorting 81
  Uninstalling 75, 82, 137, 169
Applications button 70, 76
Audible touch tones 131
AUTO-GPS 139
Auto-rotate screen 46

B

Backlight
  Turning off 40, 132
  Turning on 40, 153
Backup & reset 150
Battery 135
Battery level 36, 153
Battery pack 34
Bluetooth 161
  Device name 162
  Pair setting 162
  Receiving 164
  Sending 164
Bluetooth keyboard 68
Bookmark 117
  Editing 117
  Opening 117
Brightness 132

C

Calculator 78
Calendar 221
  Creating schedule 222
  Viewing schedule 222
Call 85
  Declining 87, 88
  Ending 85, 89
  Hold 89

Making ····· 85, 88
Mute ····· 89
Receiving ····· 86, 88
Speaker ····· 88
Call forwarding service ····· 91
Call history ····· 89
Adding to Phonebook ····· 90
Deleting ····· 90
Making a call ····· 90
Call notification ····· 92
Call settings ····· 91
Call Waiting ····· 91
Caller ID display request service ····· 91
Caller ID notification ····· 91
Camera ····· 185
Face detection ····· 200
Front camera ····· 199
Picture effect ····· 201
Quick launch ····· 199
Recording videos ····· 195
Settings (still camera) ····· 189
Settings (video camera) ····· 196
Shooting mode ····· 187
Shooting screen ····· 187
Shooting still pictures ····· 188
Smile Shutter ····· 200
Sweep Panorama ····· 202
Character entry ····· 49
Character mode ····· 52, 55, 58, 60
Edit ····· 61
Input method ····· 52, 55, 58, 60
Settings ····· 62
Charging ····· 35
Desktop Holder ····· 36
Using a PC ····· 38
Using AC adapter ····· 37
Using DC adapter ····· 38
Chat ····· 112
Checkbox on/off ····· 47
Chrome ····· 80
Contact Picker 2.3 ····· 67
Contacts ····· 80

D

Data synchronization
Auto-sync ····· 142
Data usage ····· 122
Date & time ····· 151
Developer options ····· 153
Dial ····· 79
Disaster kit ····· 78
Display ····· 132
dmarket ····· 167
dmenu ····· 167
docomo backup ····· 227
docomo mini UIM card ····· 20, 31
PIN ····· 146
docomo service ····· 139
docomo voice input ····· 48, 49
docomo Wi-Fi Easy Connection ····· 77

E

Ear speaker volume ····· 89
Early Warning "Area Mail" ····· 113
eBook Reader by Sony ····· 79
Email ····· 105
Deleting ····· 108
Forwarding ····· 108
Initial settings ····· 105

Receiving ····· 107
Replying ····· 108
Saving attachment file ····· 108
Sending ····· 106
Email account
Adding ····· 110
Changing ····· 109
Deleting ····· 110
Emergency call ····· 85
English guidance ····· 92
Extensions ····· 67

F

Facebook ····· 140
File Commander ····· 80
FM radio ····· 183

G

Gmail ····· 112
Google ····· 139
Google Maps ····· 218
Current location ····· 218
Getting direction ····· 220
Google Latitude ····· 220
Layers ····· 219
Search ····· 219
Street View ····· 218
Google Talk ····· 112
Google voice search ····· 48
Google voice typing ····· 48, 49
Google+ ····· 80
GPS function ····· 216
current location search ····· 217
Enabling GPS function ····· 217

H

Handwriting input ····· 60
HDMI ····· 208
Home application ····· 70, 84
Home screen ····· 70
Adding ····· 74
Deleting ····· 74
Folder ····· 73
Group ····· 74
Kisekae ····· 73
Learning ····· 70
List ····· 71
Shortcut ····· 71, 75
Sorting ····· 75
Wallpaper ····· 73
Widget ····· 72, 75

I

IC Tag/Barcode Reader ····· 78
iC transfer service ····· 170
i-channel ····· 77
i-concier ····· 77
Infrared communication ····· 158
Infrared data port ····· 30, 158
Initial settings ····· 40
Internal storage ····· 134
Format ····· 134
International call ····· 86
International roaming service ····· 230
International roaming setting ····· 236
IrDA (Infrared communication) ····· 158

J

Japanese syllabary keyboard ····· 58

K

Key icons ····· 45
Kisekae ····· 73
Koe-no-Takuhaibin ····· 91

L

Landscape view ····· 46
Language & input ····· 149
Let's start PSM ····· 79
Light sensor ····· 30
Location services ····· 143, 216
Location-based Wi-Fi ····· 127
Lock screen ····· 133

M

Media Go ····· 158
Media Player ····· 210
  Play list ····· 212
  Playback ····· 210
Media server setting ····· 165
Memo ····· 78
Message (SMS) ····· 102
  Deleting message ····· 104
  Deleting messages (SMS) by party ····· 104
  New registration of contact ····· 103
  Receiving ····· 103
  Sending ····· 102
  Setting ····· 104
Messenger ····· 81
MHL ····· 208
microSD card ····· 33, 134
  Format ····· 135
microUSB cable ····· 154
Missed call ····· 91
Mobile BRAVIA Engine 2 ····· 132
Moji-Henshu ····· 49
mopera U ····· 129
mopera U Mail ····· 111
Movies ····· 79
Moving data ····· 154
Music Unlimited ····· 79
My profile ····· 93, 98

N

Network connection settings ····· 118
Network mode ····· 234
Network service ····· 91
NFC ····· 175
  One-touch function ····· 171
Notes ····· 79
Notification icon ····· 42
Notification LED ····· 44
Notification panel ····· 43
Notification ringtone ····· 131
Nuisance call blocking service ····· 91

O

OfficeSuite ····· 229
Online dictionary ····· 66
Osaifu-Keitai ····· 169
  NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Lock Settings ····· 173
Own number ····· 6, 93, 98, 153

P

PC Companion ····· 155, 252
Personal Unblocking Key (PUK code) ····· 146
Phone language ····· 149
Phonebook ····· 92

Accounts to display ····· 95
Adding a new entry ····· 93
Combining ····· 97
Communication ····· 93
Contacts display order ····· 95
Deleting ····· 98
Editing ····· 96
Exporting ····· 100
Favorites ····· 96
Groups ····· 95
Importing ····· 101
Infrared ····· 98
Making a call ····· 94
My profile ····· 93, 98
Ringtone ····· 97
Searching ····· 94
Sending (Sharing) ····· 99
Setting photo ····· 97
Shortcuts ····· 94
Timeline ····· 93
Phonebook list screen ····· 93
Phonepad keyboard ····· 52
Flick input ····· 53
Toggle entry ····· 54
Photo collection ····· 78
PIN code ····· 145
Play Movies & TV ····· 80
Play Store ····· 168
Deleting ····· 169
Installing ····· 168
Playing video ····· 206
PlayMemories Online ····· 79
POBox Touch User Guide ····· 61, 68
Power management ····· 135
Power Saver ····· 135
Preferred apps settings ····· 70, 138
Proximity sensor ····· 30

Q

QWERTY keyboard ····· 55

R

Radio button on/off ····· 47
Recent calls screen ····· 89
Recording videos ····· 195
Reject unregistered call ····· 92
Remote operation settings ····· 92
Remote support ····· 78
Reset ····· 150
Ringtone setting ····· 131
Ringtone volume ····· 86, 130

S

Schedule ····· 78
Screen lock ····· 40, 146
Changing ····· 147
Setting ····· 147
Unlocking ····· 147
Screen mirroring ····· 138
Screenshot ····· 47
Searching ····· 48
Voice search ····· 48
Second call settings ····· 92
Security ····· 143
Security code
Network security code ····· 145
Personal Unblocking Key (PUK code) ··· 146
PIN code ····· 145
Setting menu ····· 118

Setup guide ····· 40, 150
Shabette concier ····· 77
Shooting still pictures ····· 188
Silent mode ····· 131
SIM card lock ····· 146
Small apps ····· 83
Smart Connect ····· 138
Software keyboard ····· 50
  Common settings ····· 62
  Keyboard skin ····· 64
Software update ····· 250
Sound ····· 130
Specific Absorption Rate of Mobile Phone ····· 256
Specification ····· 253
sp-mode ····· 129
sp-mode mail ····· 102
Status bar ····· 41
Status icon ····· 41
Stereo Headset with Microphone ····· 87, 176, 183, 204
Stopwatch ····· 226
Storage ····· 134

T

Tethering ····· 125
  USB tethering ····· 126
  Wi-Fi tethering ····· 126
Text editing ····· 61
Theme ····· 132
Timer ····· 226
Timescape ····· 213
  Filter ····· 214
  Initial settings ····· 213
  Setting ····· 215
  Tile ····· 214
ToruCa ····· 174
Touch screen ····· 45
  Drag ····· 45
  Flick ····· 45
  Pinch ····· 46
  Scroll ····· 46
  Tap ····· 45
  Touch and hold ····· 45
TrackID ····· 79
Transferring data ····· 154
Troubleshooting ····· 239
Turning power on/off ····· 39

U

Update Center ····· 250
USB connection ····· 38, 154
USB keyboard ····· 68
USB storage ····· 134
  Format ····· 135
User dictionary
  English user dictionary ····· 65
  Japanese user dictionary ····· 65
User dictionary settings ····· 65
  Backing up and restoring ····· 66

V

Vibration ····· 104, 131, 224
Video Unlimited ····· 79
Viewing photos ····· 205
Voice input
  docomo voice input ····· 63
  Google voice typing ····· 63
Voice mail service ····· 91

VPN ····· 124

W

WALKMAN ····· 79
Wallpaper ····· 73
Waterproofness/Dustproofness ····· 24
Web browser ····· 114
Adding a tab ····· 115
Adjusting settings ····· 116
Bookmark ····· 117
Closing ····· 115
Copying text ····· 115
Going back to the previous page ····· 115
History ····· 117
Link ····· 116
Moving ····· 114
Opening ····· 114
Searching text ····· 115
Setting home page ····· 116
Switching tabs ····· 115
Zooming in/out ····· 115
Wi-Fi ····· 118
Sleep policy ····· 122
Wi-Fi Direct ····· 127
Word suggestion ····· 64
Words by learning ····· 65
WORLD CALL ····· 86
World clock ····· 225
WORLD WING ····· 230

X

xLOUD ····· 130
Xperia ····· 138
Xperia Chinese keyboard ····· 49
Xperia Japanese keyboard ····· 49
Setting ····· 62
Xperia keyboard ····· 49
Xperia Start Up ····· 79

Y

YouTube ····· 207

Numerics

1Seg ····· 175
Data broadcasting ····· 179
Initial settings ····· 177
Program guide ····· 183
Recording ····· 182
Recording reservation ····· 182
Settings ····· 179
TVlink ····· 181
Viewing reservation ····· 182
Watching program ····· 178
1Seg antenna cable ····· 176

Make various applications or charge your billing plan, check your charges and points, and more online.
sp-mode: dmenu ⇒ " お客様サポートへ (To Customer support)" ⇒ " 各種お申込・お手続き (Various applications/procedures)"
PC: My docomo (http://www.mydocomo.com/) ⇒ 各種お申込・お手続き (Various applications/procedures)
(In Japanese only)

* When using with sp-mode, "Network security code" is required.
* When using with sp-mode, you may be charged.
* "docomo ID and password" are required for use.
* Please contact "General Inquiries" described on the last page if you forget or do not have "docomo ID and password".
* May not be available in some cases depending on the conditions of your subscription.
* There are cases where the site may not be available due to system maintenance, etc.

Don't forget your mobile phone ... or your manners!

Remember to be courteous to others when you use your terminal.

Turn the power off when you are:

■ In places where use is prohibited

Be sure to switch the power off in an aircraft or a hospital.

* Electronic medical devices may be in use near you.

Turn off your terminal even in hospital lobbies and waiting rooms as well as hospital wards.

■ In crowded places such as peak-hour trains if implanted electronic medical devices may be in use near you

Radio waves emitted by the terminal may adversely affect implanted pacemakers and ICDs when used in close proximity.

■ Driving

Using a handheld mobile phone while driving will result in a penalty.
However, absolutely necessary cases such as rescue of a sick person or maintaining public's safety are exempted.

■ In places such as theaters, cinemas, and art galleries

Using the terminal in a public place, where you need to be quiet, annoys people around you.

Keep your voice and ring tone down

■ Keep your voice down in quiet places like restaurants and hotel lobbies.

■ If you are in an outdoor public place, make sure you do not disturb others.

Respect privacy

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Have good manners

The terminal is equipped with useful functions not to answer an incoming call or to mute the sound.

【Vibrate】(P.131)
Vibrates when there is an incoming call.

【Silent mode】(P.131)
Silent mode mutes the sounds of the terminal such as the operation sounds and the ringtone.

* Shutter sound cannot be muted.

You can also use optional services such as the Voice Mail Service (P.91) and Call Forwarding Service (P.91).

General Inquiries
<docomo Information Center>

0120-005-250 (toll free)

*Service available in: English, Portuguese, Chinese, Spanish, Korean.
*Unavailable from part of IP phones.
(Business hours: 9:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m.)

■From DOCOMO mobile phones (In Japanese only)

(No prefix) 151 (toll free)

*Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.

■From land-line phones (In Japanese only)

0120-800-000 (toll free)

*Unavailable from part of IP phones.
(Business hours: 9:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m. (open all year round))

Repairs

■From DOCOMO mobile phones (In Japanese only)

(No prefix) 113 (toll free)

*Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.

■From land-line phones (In Japanese only)

0120-800-000 (toll free)

*Unavailable from part of IP phones.
(Business hours: 24 hours (open all year round))

●Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
●For Applications or Repairs and After-Sales Service, please contact the above-mentioned information center or the docomo Shop etc. near you on the NTT DOCOMO website.
NTT DOCOMO website http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/

Loss or theft of terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas
<docomo Information Center>
(available 24 hours a day)

From DOCOMO mobile phones

International call access code for the country you stay -81-3-6832-6600* (toll free)

*You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a land-line phone, etc.
*If you use SO-01E, you should dial the number +81-3-6832-6600 (to enter '＋', touch and hold '0').

From land-line phones

<Universal number>

Universal number international prefix -8000120-0151*

*You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.
*For international call access codes for major countries and universal number international prefix, refer to DOCOMO International Services website.

●If you lose your terminal or have it stolen, immediately take the steps necessary for suspending the use of the terminal.
●If the terminal you purchased is damaged, bring your terminal to a repair counter specified by DOCOMO after returning to Japan.

Failures encountered overseas
<Network Support and Operation Center>
(available 24 hours a day)

From DOCOMO mobile phones

International call access code for the country you stay -81-3-6718-1414* (toll free)

*You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a land-line phone, etc.
*If you use SO-01E, you should dial the number +81-3-6718-1414 (to enter '＋', touch and hold '0').

From land-line phones

<Universal number>

Universal number international prefix -8005931-8600*

*You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.
*For international call access codes for major countries and universal number international prefix, refer to DOCOMO International Services website.

We collect old phones, etc. regardless of brands and manufacturers. Bring them to your nearest docomo Shop.
*Items to be collected: mobile phones, PHS, battery packs, chargers, desktop holders (regardless of brands and manufacturers)

Don't forget your mobile phone・・・or your manners!
◎When using your mobile phone in a public place, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Li-ion 00

SONY®

Sales: NTT DOCOMO, INC.
Manufacturer: Sony Mobile Communications Japan, Inc

'12.11 (1st Edition) 1268-9178.1